

# CLI Reference Guide

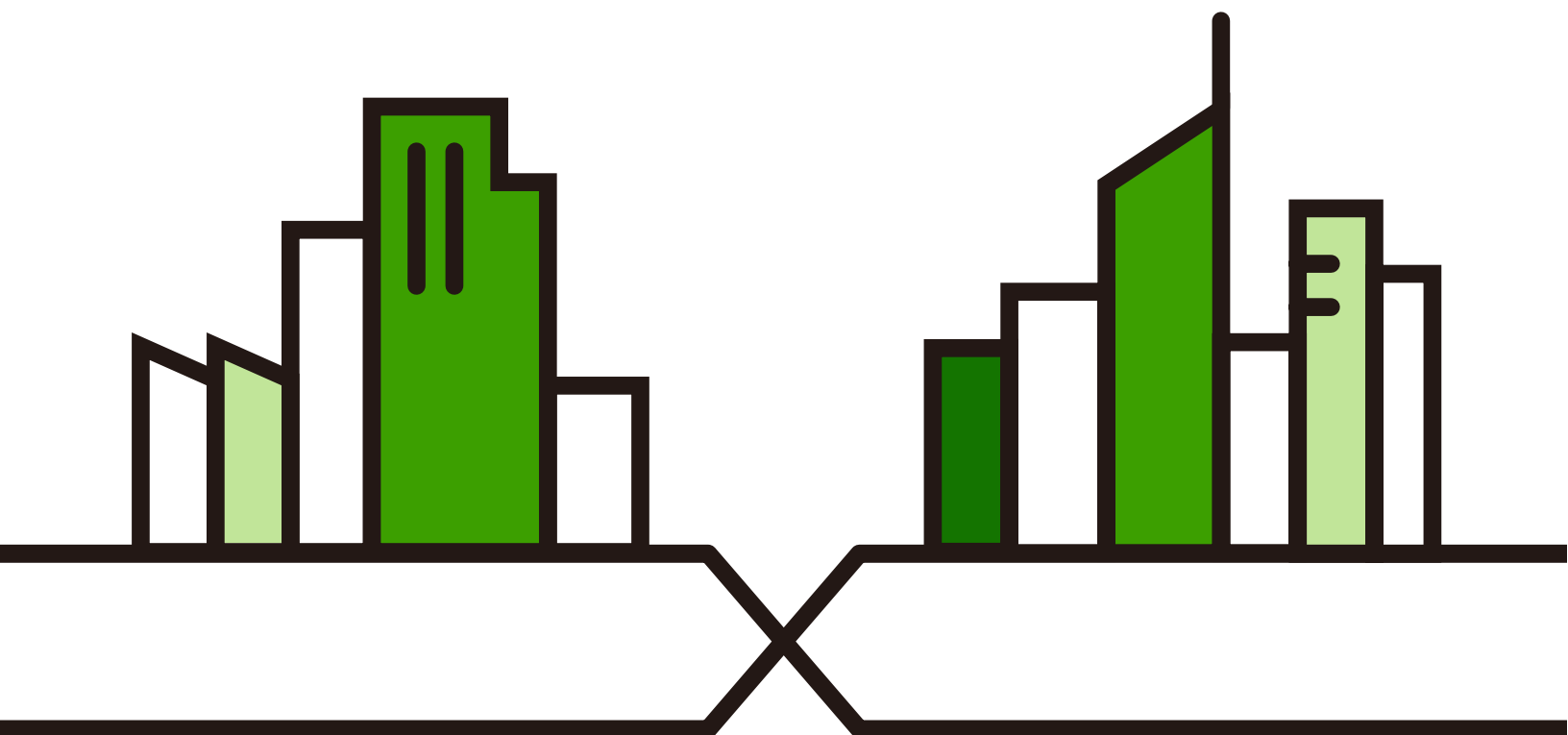
## NWA/WAC/WAX/WBE Series

802.11 a/b/g/n/ac/ax/be Access Point

### Default Login Details

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| LAN IP Address | http://DHCP-assigned IP<br>OR<br>http://192.168.1.2 |
| User Name      | admin   |
| Password       | 1234  |

Version 6.29/6.65 Ed. 1, 10/2023



**IMPORTANT!**  
**READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.**  
**KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.**

This is a Reference Guide for a series of products intended for people who want to configure the Zyxel Device via Command Line Interface (CLI).

Note: Some commands or command options in this guide may not be available in your product. See your product's User's Guide for a list of supported features. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this guide is accurate.

## How To Use This Guide

- 1 Read [Chapter 2 on page 22](#) for how to access and use the CLI (Command Line Interface).
- 2 Read [Chapter 3 on page 33](#) to learn about the CLI user and privilege modes.

**Do not use commands not documented in this guide.**


## Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide  
The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the Zyxel Device and access the Web Configurator.
- User's Guide  
The User's Guide explains how to use the Web Configurator to configure the Zyxel Device.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Zyxel Device.

## Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this guide may use the following generic icons. The Zyxel Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

| Zyxel Device  | AP Controller   | Router  | Switch   | Internet  |
|---|---|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |

# Contents Overview

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Introduction .....</b>               | <b>11</b> |
| Getting to Know your Zyxel Device ..... | 12        |
| Command Line Interface .....            | 22        |
| User and Privilege Modes .....          | 33        |
| <b>Reference .....</b>                  | <b>36</b> |
| Status .....                            | 37        |
| Object Reference .....                  | 40        |
| Interfaces .....                        | 42        |
| Storm Control .....                     | 49        |
| NCC Discovery .....                     | 51        |
| Users .....                             | 53        |
| AP Management .....                     | 58        |
| Wireless LAN Profiles .....             | 70        |
| Rogue AP .....                          | 91        |
| Wireless Frame Capture .....            | 95        |
| Dynamic Channel Selection .....         | 97        |
| Wireless Load Balancing .....           | 98        |
| Bluetooth .....                         | 101       |
| Certificates .....                      | 103       |
| System .....                            | 106       |
| System Remote Management .....          | 111       |
| AAA Server .....                        | 117       |
| Authentication Objects .....            | 123       |
| File Manager .....                      | 126       |
| Logs .....                              | 142       |
| Reports and Reboot .....                | 149       |
| Session Timeout .....                   | 155       |
| LEDs .....                              | 156       |
| Antenna Switch .....                    | 158       |
| Diagnostics .....                       | 160       |
| Maintenance Tools .....                 | 162       |
| Watchdog Timer .....                    | 167       |

# Table of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Contents Overview .....</b>                          | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>Table of Contents .....</b>                          | <b>4</b>  |
| <br>  |           |
| <b>Part I: Introduction .....</b>                       | <b>11</b> |
| <br>  |           |
| <b>Chapter 1</b>  |           |
| <b>Getting to Know your Zyxel Device .....</b>          | <b>12</b> |
| 1.1 Overview .....                                      | 12        |
| 1.2 Zyxel Device Product Feature .....                  | 12        |
| <br>  |           |
| <b>Chapter 2</b>  |           |
| <b>Command Line Interface .....</b>                     | <b>22</b> |
| 2.1 Overview .....                                      | 22        |
| 2.1.1 The Configuration File .....                      | 22        |
| 2.2 Accessing the CLI .....                             | 22        |
| 2.2.1 Console Port .....                                | 23        |
| 2.2.2 SSH (Secure SHell) .....                          | 23        |
| 2.3 How to Find Commands in this Guide .....            | 24        |
| 2.4 How Commands Are Explained .....                    | 24        |
| 2.4.1 Background Information .....                      | 24        |
| 2.4.2 Command Input Values .....                        | 24        |
| 2.4.3 Command Summary .....                             | 25        |
| 2.4.4 Command Examples .....                            | 25        |
| 2.4.5 Command Syntax .....                              | 25        |
| 2.4.6 Changing the Password .....                       | 25        |
| 2.5 CLI Modes .....                                     | 25        |
| 2.6 Shortcuts and Help .....                            | 26        |
| 2.6.1 List of Available Commands .....                  | 26        |
| 2.6.2 List of Sub-commands or Required User Input ..... | 27        |
| 2.6.3 Entering Partial Commands .....                   | 27        |
| 2.6.4 Entering a ? in a Command .....                   | 28        |
| 2.6.5 Command History .....                             | 28        |
| 2.6.6 Navigation .....                                  | 28        |
| 2.6.7 Erase Current Command .....                       | 28        |
| 2.6.8 The no Commands .....                             | 28        |
| 2.7 Input Values .....                                  | 28        |
| 2.8 Saving Configuration Changes .....                  | 32        |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 2.9 Logging Out .....  | 32        |
| <b>Chapter 3</b>   |           |
| <b>User and Privilege Modes .....</b>                          | <b>33</b> |
| 3.1 User And Privilege Modes .....                             | 33        |
| 3.1.1 Debug Commands .....                                     | 34        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Part II: Reference .....</b>                                | <b>36</b> |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 4</b>   |           |
| <b>Status .....</b>  | <b>37</b> |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 5</b>   |           |
| <b>Object Reference .....</b>                                  | <b>40</b> |
| 5.1 Object Reference Commands .....                            | 40        |
| 5.1.1 Object Reference Command Example .....                   | 41        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 6</b>   |           |
| <b>Interfaces .....</b>  | <b>42</b> |
| 6.1 Interface Overview .....                                   | 42        |
| 6.2 Interface General Commands Summary .....                   | 42        |
| 6.2.1 Basic Interface Properties and IP Address Commands ..... | 43        |
| 6.3 Port Commands .....  | 47        |
| 6.3.1 Port Command Examples .....                              | 48        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 7</b>   |           |
| <b>Storm Control .....</b>                                     | <b>49</b> |
| 7.1 Overview .....   | 49        |
| 7.2 Storm Control Commands .....                               | 49        |
| 7.2.1 Storm Control Command Examples .....                     | 50        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 8</b>   |           |
| <b>NCC Discovery .....</b>                                     | <b>51</b> |
| 8.1 Overview .....   | 51        |
| 8.2 NCC Discovery Commands .....                               | 51        |
| 8.2.1 NCC Discovery Command Example .....                      | 52        |
| <br>   |           |
| <b>Chapter 9</b>   |           |
| <b>Users .....</b>   | <b>53</b> |
| 9.1 User Account Overview .....                                | 53        |
| 9.1.1 User Types .....   | 53        |
| 9.2 User Commands Summary .....                                | 53        |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 9.2.1 Username and User Commands .....             | 54        |
| 9.2.2 User Setting Commands .....                  | 55        |
| 9.2.3 Additional User Commands .....               | 56        |
| <b>Chapter 10</b>                                  |           |
| <b>AP Management.....</b>                          | <b>58</b> |
| 10.1 AP Management Overview .....                  | 58        |
| 10.2 AP Management Commands .....                  | 60        |
| 10.2.1 AP Management Commands Example .....        | 63        |
| 10.3 AP Management Client Commands .....           | 67        |
| 10.3.1 AP Management Client Commands Example ..... | 68        |
| <b>Chapter 11</b>                                  |           |
| <b>Wireless LAN Profiles .....</b>                 | <b>70</b> |
| 11.1 Wireless LAN Profiles Overview .....          | 70        |
| 11.2 AP Radio Profile Commands .....               | 70        |
| 11.2.1 AP radio Profile Commands Example .....     | 77        |
| 11.3 SSID Profile Commands .....                   | 79        |
| 11.3.1 SSID Profile Example 1 .....                | 81        |
| 11.3.2 SSID Profile Example 2 .....                | 82        |
| 11.4 Security Profile Commands .....               | 83        |
| 11.4.1 Security Profile Example .....              | 87        |
| 11.5 MAC Filter Profile Commands .....             | 87        |
| 11.5.1 MAC Filter Profile Example .....            | 88        |
| 11.6 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Commands .....      | 89        |
| 11.6.1 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Example .....     | 89        |
| 11.7 WDS Profile Commands .....                    | 90        |
| 11.7.1 WDS Profile Example .....                   | 90        |
| <b>Chapter 12</b>                                  |           |
| <b>Rogue AP .....</b>                              | <b>91</b> |
| 12.1 Rogue AP Detection Overview .....             | 91        |
| 12.2 Rogue AP Detection Commands .....             | 91        |
| 12.2.1 Rogue AP Detection Examples .....           | 93        |
| <b>Chapter 13</b>                                  |           |
| <b>Wireless Frame Capture .....</b>                | <b>95</b> |
| 13.1 Wireless Frame Capture Overview .....         | 95        |
| 13.2 Wireless Frame Capture Commands .....         | 95        |
| 13.2.1 Wireless Frame Capture Examples .....       | 96        |
| <b>Chapter 14</b>                                  |           |
| <b>Dynamic Channel Selection.....</b>              | <b>97</b> |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 14.1 DCS Overview .....                             | 97         |
| 14.2 DCS Commands .....                             | 97         |
| <b>Chapter 15</b>                                   |            |
| <b>Wireless Load Balancing .....</b>                | <b>98</b>  |
| 15.1 Wireless Load Balancing Overview .....         | 98         |
| 15.2 Wireless Load Balancing Commands .....         | 98         |
| 15.2.1 Wireless Load Balancing Examples .....       | 100        |
| <b>Chapter 16</b>                                   |            |
| <b>Bluetooth.....</b>                               | <b>101</b> |
| 16.1 Bluetooth Overview .....                       | 101        |
| 16.2 Bluetooth Commands .....                       | 102        |
| 16.2.1 Bluetooth Commands Example .....             | 102        |
| <b>Chapter 17</b>                                   |            |
| <b>Certificates .....</b>                           | <b>103</b> |
| 17.1 Certificates Overview .....                    | 103        |
| 17.2 Certificate Commands .....                     | 103        |
| 17.3 Certificates Commands Input Values .....       | 103        |
| 17.4 Certificates Commands Summary .....            | 104        |
| 17.5 Certificates Commands Examples .....           | 105        |
| <b>Chapter 18</b>                                   |            |
| <b>System.....</b>                                  | <b>106</b> |
| 18.1 System Overview .....                          | 106        |
| 18.2 Host Name Commands .....                       | 106        |
| 18.3 Roaming Group Commands .....                   | 107        |
| 18.4 Time and Date .....                            | 107        |
| 18.4.1 Date/Time Commands .....                     | 107        |
| 18.5 Console Port Speed .....                       | 108        |
| 18.6 DNS Overview .....                             | 109        |
| 18.6.1 DNS Commands .....                           | 109        |
| 18.6.2 DNS Command Example .....                    | 110        |
| 18.7 Power Mode .....                               | 110        |
| <b>Chapter 19</b>                                   |            |
| <b>System Remote Management.....</b>                | <b>111</b> |
| 19.1 System Timeout .....                           | 111        |
| 19.2 HTTP/HTTPS Commands .....                      | 111        |
| 19.2.1 HTTP/HTTPS Command Examples .....            | 112        |
| 19.3 SSH .....                                      | 113        |
| 19.3.1 SSH Implementation on the Zyxel Device ..... | 113        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 19.3.2 Requirements for Using SSH .....                       | 113        |
| 19.3.3 SSH Commands .....                                     | 113        |
| 19.3.4 SSH Command Examples .....                             | 113        |
| 19.4 Configuring FTP .....                                    | 114        |
| 19.4.1 FTP Commands .....                                     | 114        |
| 19.4.2 FTP Commands Examples .....                            | 114        |
| 19.5 SNMP .....   | 114        |
| 19.5.1 Supported MIBs .....                                   | 115        |
| 19.5.2 SNMP Traps .....                                       | 115        |
| 19.5.3 SNMP Commands .....                                    | 115        |
| <b>Chapter 20</b>   |            |
| <b>AAA Server .....</b>                                       | <b>117</b> |
| 20.1 AAA Server Overview .....                                | 117        |
| 20.2 Authentication Server Command Summary .....              | 117        |
| 20.2.1 radius-server Commands .....                           | 117        |
| 20.2.2 radius-server Command Example .....                    | 118        |
| 20.2.3 aaa group server ad Commands .....                     | 118        |
| 20.2.4 aaa group server ldap Commands .....                   | 119        |
| 20.2.5 aaa group server radius Commands .....                 | 121        |
| 20.2.6 aaa group server Command Example .....                 | 122        |
| <b>Chapter 21</b>   |            |
| <b>Authentication Objects .....</b>                           | <b>123</b> |
| 21.1 Authentication Objects Overview .....                    | 123        |
| 21.2 aaa authentication Commands .....                        | 123        |
| 21.2.1 aaa authentication Command Example .....               | 124        |
| 21.3 test aaa Command .....                                   | 124        |
| 21.3.1 Test a User Account Command Example .....              | 125        |
| <b>Chapter 22</b>   |            |
| <b>File Manager .....</b>                                     | <b>126</b> |
| 22.1 File Directories .....                                   | 126        |
| 22.2 Configuration Files and Shell Scripts Overview .....     | 126        |
| 22.2.1 Comments in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts ..... | 127        |
| 22.2.2 Errors in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts .....   | 128        |
| 22.2.3 Zyxel Device Configuration File Details .....          | 129        |
| 22.2.4 Configuration File Flow at Restart .....               | 129        |
| 22.2.5 Sensitive Data Protection .....                        | 129        |
| 22.3 File Manager Commands Input Values .....                 | 130        |
| 22.4 File Manager Commands Summary .....                      | 131        |
| 22.5 File Manager Command Example .....                       | 133        |
| 22.6 FTP File Transfer .....                                  | 133        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 22.6.1 Command Line FTP File Upload .....                         | 133        |
| 22.6.2 Command Line FTP Configuration File Upload Example .....   | 134        |
| 22.6.3 Command Line FTP Firmware File Upload Example .....        | 134        |
| 22.6.4 Command Line FTP File Download .....                       | 135        |
| 22.6.5 Command Line FTP Configuration File Download Example ..... | 136        |
| 22.7 Zyxel Device File Usage at Startup .....                     | 136        |
| 22.8 Notification of a Damaged Recovery Image or Firmware .....   | 137        |
| 22.9 Restoring the Recovery Image .....                           | 138        |
| 22.10 Restoring the Firmware .....                                | 139        |
| <b>Chapter 23</b>   |            |
| <b>Logs .....</b>   | <b>142</b> |
| 23.1 Log Commands Summary .....                                   | 142        |
| 23.1.1 Log Entries Commands .....                                 | 143        |
| 23.1.2 System Log Commands .....                                  | 143        |
| 23.1.3 Debug Log Commands .....                                   | 144        |
| 23.1.4 Remote Syslog Server Log Commands .....                    | 145        |
| 23.1.5 Email Profile Log Commands .....                           | 145        |
| 23.1.6 Console Port Log Commands .....                            | 147        |
| 23.1.7 Access Point Logging Commands .....                        | 147        |
| <b>Chapter 24</b>   |            |
| <b>Reports and Reboot.....</b>                                    | <b>149</b> |
| 24.1 Report Commands Summary .....                                | 149        |
| 24.1.1 Report Commands .....                                      | 149        |
| 24.1.2 Report Command Examples .....                              | 150        |
| 24.2 Email Daily Report Commands .....                            | 150        |
| 24.2.1 Email Daily Report Example .....                           | 152        |
| 24.3 Reboot .....   | 153        |
| <b>Chapter 25</b>   |            |
| <b>Session Timeout.....</b>                                       | <b>155</b> |
| 25.1 Session Timeout Commands .....                               | 155        |
| 25.1.1 Session Timeout Commands Example .....                     | 155        |
| <b>Chapter 26</b>   |            |
| <b>LEDs .....</b>   | <b>156</b> |
| 26.1 LED Suppression Mode .....                                   | 156        |
| 26.2 LED Suppression Commands .....                               | 156        |
| 26.2.1 LED Suppression Commands Example .....                     | 156        |
| 26.3 LED Locator .....  | 156        |
| 26.4 LED Locator Commands .....                                   | 157        |
| 26.4.1 LED Locator Commands Example .....                         | 157        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Chapter 27</b>                                  |            |
| <b>Antenna Switch .....</b>                        | <b>158</b> |
| 27.1 Antenna Switch Overview .....                 | 158        |
| 27.2 Antenna Switch Commands .....                 | 158        |
| 27.2.1 Antenna Switch Commands Examples .....      | 159        |
| <b>Chapter 28</b>                                  |            |
| <b>Diagnostics .....</b>                           | <b>160</b> |
| 28.1 Diagnostics Overview .....                    | 160        |
| 28.2 Diagnosis Commands .....                      | 160        |
| 28.2.1 Diagnosis Commands Examples .....           | 160        |
| <b>Chapter 29</b>                                  |            |
| <b>Maintenance Tools .....</b>                     | <b>162</b> |
| 29.0.1 Command Examples .....                      | 164        |
| <b>Chapter 30</b>                                  |            |
| <b>Watchdog Timer.....</b>                         | <b>167</b> |
| 30.1 Hardware Watchdog Timer .....                 | 167        |
| 30.2 Software Watchdog Timer .....                 | 167        |
| 30.3 Application Watchdog .....                    | 168        |
| 30.3.1 Application Watchdog Commands Example ..... | 169        |
| <b>List of Commands (Alphabetical) .....</b>       | <b>170</b> |

---

# PART I

## Introduction

---

# CHAPTER 1

# Getting to Know your Zyxel Device

## 1.1 Overview

Your Zyxel Device is a wireless AP (Access Point). It extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users.

You can set the Zyxel Device to operate in either standalone AP or managed AP mode. When the Zyxel Device is in standalone AP mode, it can serve as a normal AP, as an RF monitor to search for rogue APs to help eliminate network threats (if it support rogue APs detection), or even as a root AP or a wireless repeater to establish wireless links with other APs in a WDS (Wireless Distribution System). A WDS is a wireless connection between two or more APs.

Your Zyxel Device's business-class reliability, SMB features, and centralized wireless management make it ideally suited for advanced service delivery in mission-critical networks. It uses Multiple BSSID and VLAN to provide simultaneous independent virtual APs. Additionally, innovations in roaming technology and QoS features eliminate voice call disruptions.

The Zyxel Device controls network access with Media Access Control (MAC) address filtering, and rogue Access Point (AP) detection. It also provides a high level of network traffic security, supporting IEEE 802.1x, Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 (WPA2), Wi-Fi Protected Access 3 (WPA3) and Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) data encryption.

## 1.2 Zyxel Device Product Feature

The following tables show the differences between each Zyxel Device model. You can find the feature introductions in the later sections. The following tables show the differences between each Zyxel Device model. You can find the feature introductions in the later sections.

The following table lists the features of the Zyxel Device.

The following table lists the features of the Zyxel Device.

Table 1 WiFi 6 Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | NWA50AX  | NWA90AX  | NWA55AXE   |
|---|--|--|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz  |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX-Personal<br>WPA3-Personal                           | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                   | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX-Personal<br>WPA3-Personal                           |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64   | 64   | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 2  | 2  | 2  |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | No   | Yes  | No   |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | No   | Yes  | No   |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Wireless Bridge   | No   | No   | Yes  |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | No   | Yes  | No   |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3at   | IEEE 802.3at   | IEEE 802.3at   |
| Power Detection   | No   | No   | No   |
| External Antennas   | No   | No   | Yes  |
| Internal Antennas   | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Console Port  | 4-Pin Serial   | 4-Pin Serial   | No   |
| Reset button  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| LED Locator   | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| LED Suppression   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery                                  | No   | No   | No   |
| NCC Discovery   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support                                  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming                                    | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Ethernet Storm Control  | No   | No   | No   |
| Grounding   | No   | No   | No   |
| Power Jack  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Maximum number of log messages                                | 512 event logs   |  |  |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported                             | 6.29   | 6.29   | 6.29   |

Table 2 WiFi 6 PRO Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | NWA50AX PRO  | NWA90AX PRO  |
|---|--|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX-Personal<br>WPA3-Personal                           | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                   |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64   | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 2  | 2  |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | No   | Yes  |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | No   | Yes  |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes  | Yes  |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes  | Yes  |
| Wireless Bridge   | No   | No   |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | No   | Yes  |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3at   | IEEE 802.3at   |
| Power Detection   | No   | No   |
| External Antennas   | No   | No   |
| Internal Antennas   | Yes  | Yes  |
| Console Port  | 4-Pin Serial   | 4-Pin Serial   |
| Reset Button  | Yes  | Yes  |
| LED Locator   | Yes  | Yes  |
| LED Suppression   | Yes  | Yes  |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery                                  | No   | No   |
| NCC Discovery   | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support                                  | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming                                    | Yes  | Yes  |
| Ethernet Storm Control  | No   | No   |
| Grounding   | No   | No   |
| Power Jack  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Maximum number of log messages                                | 512 event logs   |  |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported                             | 6.65   | 6.65   |

The following tables show the differences between each Zyxel Device model. You can find the feature introductions in the later sections.

Table 3 500/1000 Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | WAC500/<br>WAC500H  | NWA1123-ACv3  |
|---|---|---|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz  | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz  |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz   | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz   |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise    | None<br>Enhanced-open<br>WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise    |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64  | 64  |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 2   | 2   |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | Yes   | Yes   |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | Yes   | Yes   |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes   | Yes   |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes   | Yes   |
| Wireless Bridge   | No  | No  |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode  | Yes   | No  |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | Yes   | Yes   |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at  | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at  |
| Power Detection   | No  | No  |
| External Antennas   | No  | No  |
| Internal Antennas   | Yes   | Yes   |
| Antenna Switch  | No  | No  |
| Smart Antenna   | Yes   | Yes   |
| Console Port  | 4-Pin Serial  | 4-Pin Serial  |
| Reset Button  | Yes   | Yes   |
| LED Locator   | Yes   | Yes   |
| LED Suppression   | Yes   | Yes   |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery                                  | Yes   | No  |
| NebulaFlex PRO  | Yes   | No  |
| NCC Discovery   | Yes   | Yes   |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support                                  | Yes   | Yes   |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming                                    | Yes   | Yes   |
| Proxy ARP   | Yes   | Yes   |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)                                    | No  | No  |

Table 3 500/1000 Models Comparison Table (continued)

| FEATURES                          | WAC500/<br>WAC500H | NWA1123-ACv3 |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Load Balancing                    | Yes                | Yes          |
| Ethernet Storm Control            | Yes                | Yes          |
| Wireless Remote Capture           | Yes                | Yes          |
| SNMP                              | Yes                | Yes          |
| Grounding                         | No                 | No           |
| Power Jack                        | Yes                | Yes          |
| Maximum number of log messages    | 512 event logs     |              |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported | 6.60               | 6.60         |

Table 4 WiFi 6 Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | WAX630S  | WAX650S  | NWA110AX<br>NWA210AX   |
|---|--|--|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz<br>(NWA210AX supports 160 MHz)                             |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64   | 64   | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 2  | 2  | 2  |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Wireless Bridge   | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at   | IEEE 802.3at<br>IEEE 802.3bt   | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at   |
| Power Detection   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| External Antennas   | No   | No   | No   |
| Internal Antennas   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |

Table 4 WiFi 6 Models Comparison Table (continued)

| FEATURES                          | WAX630S        | WAX650S      | NWA110AX<br>NWA210AX |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Antenna Switch                    | No             | No           | No                   |
| Smart Antenna                     | Yes            | Yes          | No                   |
| Console Port                      | 4-Pin Serial   | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial         |
| Reset Button                      | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| LED Locator                       | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| LED Suppression                   | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery      | Yes            | Yes          | No                   |
| NebulaFlex PRO                    | Yes            | Yes          | No                   |
| NCC Discovery                     | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support      | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming        | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Proxy ARP                         | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)        | No             | Yes          | No                   |
| Load Balancing                    | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Ethernet Storm Control            | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Wireless Remote Capture           | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| SNMP                              | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Grounding                         | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Power Jack                        | Yes            | Yes          | Yes                  |
| Maximum number of log messages    | 512 event logs |              |                      |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported | 6.60           | 6.60         | 6.60                 |

Table 5 WiFi 6 Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES                  | WAX655E  | WAX510D<br>WAX610D   | WAX300H  |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards  | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz   |
| Supported Channel Width   | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80 MHz<br>(WAX610D supports 160 MHz)                              | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz  |
| Available Security Modes  | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        |
| Number of SSID Profiles   | 64   | 64   | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios     | 2  | 2  | 2  |

Table 5 WiFi 6 Models Comparison Table (continued)

| FEATURES  | WAX655E                      | WAX510D<br>WAX610D           | WAX300H                      |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Wireless Bridge   | Yes                          | WAX510D: No<br>WAX610D: Yes  | No                           |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode  | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at |
| Power Detection   | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| External Antennas   | Yes                          | No                           | No                           |
| Internal Antennas   | No                           | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Antenna Switch  | No                           | Yes<br>(per AP)              | No                           |
| Smart Antenna   | No                           | No                           | No                           |
| Console Port  | 4-Pin Serial                 | 4-Pin Serial                 | 4-Pin Serial                 |
| Reset Button  | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| LED Locator   | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| LED Suppression   | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery                                  | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| NebulaFlex PRO  | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| NCC Discovery   | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support                                  | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming                                    | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Proxy ARP   | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)                                    | No                           | No                           | No                           |
| Load Balancing  | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| Ethernet Storm Control  | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| Wireless Remote Capture                                       | Yes                          | Yes                          | Yes                          |
| SNMP  | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| Grounding   | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| Power Jack  | Yes                          | Yes                          | No                           |
| Maximum number of log messages                                | 512 event logs               |                              |                              |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported                             | 6.60                         | 6.60                         | 6.60                         |

Table 6 WiFi 6E Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | WAX620D-6E   | WAX640S-6E   | NWA220AX-6E  |
|---|--|--|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz<br>6 GHz  | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz<br>6 GHz  | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz<br>6 GHz  |
| BandFlex (5 GHz/6 GHz)  | Yes  | No   | Yes  |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz<br>6G: 20/40/80/160 MHz                                | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz<br>6G: 20/40/80/160 MHz                                | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/160 MHz<br>6G: 20/40/80/160 MHz                                |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise                        |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64   | 64   | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 2  | 3  | 2  |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Wireless Bridge   | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at   | IEEE 802.3at<br>IEEE 802.3bt   | IEEE 802.3af<br>IEEE 802.3at   |
| Power Detection   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| External Antennas   | No   | No   | No   |
| Internal Antennas   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| Antenna Switch  | Yes<br>(per AP)  | No   | No   |
| Smart Antenna   | No   | Yes  | No   |
| Console Port  | 4-Pin Serial   | 4-Pin Serial   | 4-Pin Serial   |
| Reset Button  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| LED Locator   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| LED Suppression   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery                                  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| NebulaFlex PRO  | Yes  | Yes  | No   |
| NCC Discovery   | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support                                  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming                                    | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  |

Table 6 WiFi 6E Models Comparison Table (continued)

| FEATURES                          | WAX620D-6E     | WAX640S-6E | NWA220AX-6E |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| Proxy ARP                         | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)        | No             | Yes        | No          |
| Load Balancing                    | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| Ethernet Storm Control            | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| Wireless Remote Capture           | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| SNMP                              | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| Grounding                         | No             | Yes        | No          |
| Power Jack                        | Yes            | Yes        | Yes         |
| Maximum number of log messages    | 512 event logs |            |             |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported | 6.60           | 6.60       | 6.60        |

Table 7 WiFi 7 Models Comparison Table

| FEATURES  | WBE660S  |
|---|--|
| Supported WiFi Standards                                      | IEEE 802.11a<br>IEEE 802.11b<br>IEEE 802.11g<br>IEEE 802.11n<br>IEEE 802.11ac<br>IEEE 802.11ax<br>IEEE 802.11 be |
| Supported Frequency Bands                                     | 2.4 GHz<br>5 GHz<br>6 GHz  |
| BandFlex (5 GHz/6 GHz)  | Yes  |
| Supported Channel Width                                       | 2.4G: 20/40 MHz<br>5G: 20/40/80/240 MHz<br>6G: 80/160/320 MHz  |
| Available Security Modes                                      | None<br>Enhanced-open WEP<br>WPA2-MIX / WPA3 -<br>Personal & Enterprise  |
| Number of SSID Profiles                                       | 64   |
| Number of WiFi Radios   | 3  |
| Security Profile Radius Settings                              | Yes  |
| Security Profile Enterprise Authentication Settings           | Yes  |
| Rogue AP Detection  | Yes  |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes  |
| Wireless Bridge   | Yes  |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode  | Yes  |
| Layer-2 Isolation   | Yes  |
| Supported PoE Standards                                       | IEEE 802.3bt<br>IEEE 802.3at   |
| Power Detection   | Yes  |

Table 7 WiFi 7 Models Comparison Table (continued)

| FEATURES                          | WBE660S        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| External Antennas                 | No             |
| Internal Antennas                 | Yes            |
| Antenna Switch                    | No             |
| Smart Antenna                     | Yes            |
| Console Port                      | 4-Pin Serial   |
| Reset Button                      | Yes            |
| LED Locator                       | Yes            |
| LED Suppression                   | Yes            |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery      | Yes            |
| NebulaFlex PRO                    | Yes            |
| NCC Discovery                     | Yes            |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support      | Yes            |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming        | Yes            |
| Proxy ARP                         | Yes            |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)        | No             |
| Load Balancing                    | Yes            |
| Ethernet Storm Control            | Yes            |
| Wireless Remote Capture           | Yes            |
| SNMP                              | Yes            |
| Grounding                         | No             |
| Power Jack                        | USB-C          |
| Maximum number of log messages    | 512 event logs |
| Latest Firmware Version Supported | 6.65           |

# CHAPTER 2

## Command Line Interface

This chapter describes how to access and use the CLI (Command Line Interface).

### 2.1 Overview

If you have problems with your Zyxel Device, customer support may request that you issue some of these commands to assist them in troubleshooting.

**Use of undocumented commands or misconfiguration can damage the Zyxel Device and possibly render it unusable.**

#### 2.1.1 The Configuration File

When you configure the Zyxel Device using either the CLI (Command Line Interface) or the web configurator, the settings are saved as a series of commands in a configuration file on the Zyxel Device. You can store more than one configuration file on the Zyxel Device. However, only one configuration file is used at a time.

You can perform the following with a configuration file:

- Back up Zyxel Device configuration once the Zyxel Device is set up to work in your network.
- Restore Zyxel Device configuration.
- Save and edit a configuration file and upload it to multiple Zyxel Devices in your network to have the same settings.

Note: You may also edit a configuration file using a text editor.

### 2.2 Accessing the CLI

You can access the CLI using a terminal emulation program on a computer connected to the console port, or access the Zyxel Device using SSH (Secure SHell).

Note: The console port is not available in every model. Please check the User's Guide or datasheet, or refer to the product page at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) to see if your Zyxel Device has a console port.

Note: The Zyxel Device might force you to log out of your session if reauthentication time, lease time, or idle timeout is reached. See [Chapter 9 on page 53](#) for more information about these settings.

## 2.2.1 Console Port

The default settings for the console port are as follows.

Table 8 Managing the Zyxel Device: Console Port

| SETTING      | VALUE      |
|--------------|------------|
| Speed        | 115200 bps |
| Data Bits    | 8          |
| Parity       | None       |
| Stop Bit     | 1          |
| Flow Control | Off        |

When you turn on your Zyxel Device, it performs several internal tests as well as line initialization. You can view the initialization information using the console port.

- Garbled text displays if your terminal emulation program's speed is set lower than the Zyxel Device's.
- No text displays if the speed is set higher than the Zyxel Device's.
- If changing your terminal emulation program's speed does not get anything to display, restart the Zyxel Device.
- If restarting the Zyxel Device does not get anything to display, contact your local customer support.

**Figure 1** Console Port Power-on Display

```
FLASH: AMD 16M

BootModule Version: V1.13 | 06/25/2010 15:05:00
DRAM: Size = 256 Mbytes

DRAM POST: Testing: 262144K
```

After the initialization, the login screen displays.

**Figure 2** Login Screen

```
Welcome to WAX640S-6E

Username:
```

Enter the user name and password at the prompts.

Note: The default login username is **admin** and password is **1234**. The username and password are case-sensitive.

## 2.2.2 SSH (Secure SHell)

You can use an SSH client program to access the CLI. The following figure shows an example using a text-based SSH client program. Refer to the documentation that comes with your SSH program for information on using it.

Note: The default login username is **admin** and password is **1234**. The username and password are case-sensitive.

**Figure 3** SSH Login Example

```
C:\>ssh2 admin@192.168.1.2
Host key not found from database.
Key fingerprint:
xolor-takel-fipef-zevit-visom-gydog-vetan-bisol-lysob-cuvun-muxex
You can get a public key's fingerprint by running
% ssh-keygen -F publickey.pub
on the keyfile.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes

Host key saved to C:/Documents and Settings/user/Application Data/SSH/
hostkeys/
ey_22_192.168.1.2.pub
host key for 192.168.1.2, accepted by user Tue Aug 09 2022 07:38:28
admin's password:
Authentication successful.
```

## 2.3 How to Find Commands in this Guide

You can simply look for the feature chapter to find commands. In addition, you can use the [List of Commands \(Alphabetical\)](#) at the end of the guide. This section lists the commands in alphabetical order that they appear in this guide.

If you are looking at the CLI Reference Guide electronically, you might have additional options (for example, bookmarks or **Find...**) as well.

## 2.4 How Commands Are Explained

Each chapter explains the commands for one keyword. The chapters are divided into the following sections.

### 2.4.1 Background Information

Note: See the User's Guide for background information about most features.

This section provides background information about features that you cannot configure in the web configurator. In addition, this section identifies related commands in other chapters.

### 2.4.2 Command Input Values

This section lists common input values for the commands for the feature in one or more tables

## 2.4.3 Command Summary

This section lists the commands for the feature in one or more tables.

## 2.4.4 Command Examples

This section contains any examples for the commands in this feature.

## 2.4.5 Command Syntax

The following conventions are used in this User's Guide.

- A command or keyword in *courier new* must be entered literally as shown. Do not abbreviate.
- Values that you need to provide are in *italics*.
- Required fields that have multiple choices are enclosed in curly brackets { }.
- A range of numbers is enclosed in angle brackets <>.
- Optional fields are enclosed in square brackets [ ].
- The | symbol means OR.

## 2.4.6 Changing the Password

It is highly recommended that you change the password for accessing the Zyxel Device. See [Section 9.2 on page 53](#) for the appropriate commands.

# 2.5 CLI Modes

You run CLI commands in one of several modes.

Table 9 CLI Modes

|  | USER  | PRIVILEGE   | CONFIGURATION  | SUB-COMMAND  |
|--|---|---|--|--|
| What <b>User</b> users can do          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Look at (but not run) available commands</li> </ul>  | Unable to access  | Unable to access   | Unable to access   |
| What <b>Limited-Admin</b> users can do | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Look at system information (like <b>Status</b> screen)</li> <li>• Run basic diagnostics</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Look at system information (like <b>Status</b> screen)</li> <li>• Run basic diagnostics</li> </ul> | Unable to access   | Unable to access   |
| What <b>Admin</b> users can do         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Look at system information (like <b>Status</b> screen)</li> <li>• Run basic diagnostics</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Look at system information (like <b>Status</b> screen)</li> <li>• Run basic diagnostics</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure simple features (such as an address object)</li> <li>• Create or remove complex parts (such as an interface)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure complex parts (such as an interface) in the Zyxel Device</li> </ul> |
| How you enter it                       | Log in to the Zyxel Device  | Enter <b>enable</b> in <b>User</b> mode   | Enter <b>configure terminal</b> in <b>User</b> or <b>Privilege</b> mode  | Enter the command used to create the specific part in <b>Configuration</b> mode  |

Table 9 CLI Modes (continued)

|                            | USER              | PRIVILEGE            | CONFIGURATION     | SUB-COMMAND                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---|
| What the prompt looks like | Router>           | Router#              | Router(config)#   | (varies by part)<br>Router(config-if-brg)#<br>... |
| How you exit it            | Enter <b>exit</b> | Enter <b>disable</b> | Enter <b>exit</b> | Enter <b>exit</b>                                 |

See [Chapter 9 on page 53](#) for more information about the user types. **User** users can only log in, look at (but not run) the available commands in **User** mode, and log out. **Limited-Admin** users can look at the configuration in the web configurator and CLI, and they can run basic diagnostics in the CLI. **Admin** users can configure the Zyxel Device in the web configurator or CLI.

At the time of writing, there is not much difference between **User** and **Privilege** mode for admin users. This is reserved for future use.

## 2.6 Shortcuts and Help

### 2.6.1 List of Available Commands

A list of valid commands can be found by typing ? or [TAB] at the command prompt. To view a list of available commands within a command group, enter <command> ? or <command> [TAB].

Figure 4 Help: Available Commands Example 1

```
Router> ?
<cr>
apply
atse
clear
configure
-----[Snip]-----
shutdown
test
traceroute
wlan-report
write
Router>
```

**Figure 5** Help: Available Command Example 2

```
Router> show ?
<wlan ap interface>
aaa
account
app-watch-dog
apply
arp-table
-----[Snip]-----
wlan-security-profile
wlan-ssid-profile
wtp-logging
Router> show
```

## 2.6.2 List of Sub-commands or Required User Input

To view detailed help information for a command, enter `<command> <sub command> ?`.

**Figure 6** Help: Sub-command Information Example

```
Router(config)# ip ssh server ?
;
<cr>
cert
port
|
Router(config)# ip ssh server
```

**Figure 7** Help: Required User Input Example

```
Router(config)# ip ssh server port ?
<1..65535>
Router(config)# ip ssh server port
```

## 2.6.3 Entering Partial Commands

The CLI does not accept partial or incomplete commands. You may enter a unique part of a command and press [TAB] to have the Zyxel Device automatically display the full command.

For example, if you enter **config** and press [TAB], the full command of **configure** automatically displays.

If you enter a partial command that is not unique and press [TAB], the Zyxel Device displays a list of commands that start with the partial command.

**Figure 8** Non-Unique Partial Command Example

```
Router# c [TAB]
clear      configure  copy
Router# co [TAB]
configure  copy
```

## 2.6.4 Entering a ? in a Command

Typing a ? (question mark) usually displays help information. However, some commands allow you to input a ?, for example as part of a string. Press [CTRL+V] on your keyboard to enter a ? without the Zyxel Device treating it as a help query.

## 2.6.5 Command History

The Zyxel Device keeps a list of commands you have entered for the current CLI session. You can use any commands in the history again by pressing the up (↑) or down (↓) arrow key to scroll through the previously used commands and press [ENTER].

## 2.6.6 Navigation

Press [CTRL]+A to move the cursor to the beginning of the line. Press [CTRL]+E to move the cursor to the end of the line.

## 2.6.7 Erase Current Command

Press [CTRL]+U to erase whatever you have currently typed at the prompt (before pressing [ENTER]).

## 2.6.8 The no Commands

When entering the no commands described in this document, you may not need to type the whole command. For example, with the "[no] mss <536..1452>" command, you use "mss 536" to specify the MSS value. But to disable the MSS setting, you only need to type "no mss" instead of "no mss 536".

## 2.7 Input Values

You can use the ? or [TAB] to get more information about the next input value that is required for a command. In some cases, the next input value is a string whose length and allowable characters may not be displayed in the screen. For example, in the following example, the next input value is a string called <description>.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface lan
Router(config-if-brg)# description ?
<description>
```

The following table provides more information about input values like <description>.

Table 10 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands

| TAG | # VALUES | LEGAL VALUES |
|-----|----------|--------------|
| *   | 1        | *            |
| all | --       | ALL          |

Table 10 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

| TAG                               | # VALUES       | LEGAL VALUES  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|---|
| <i>authentication key</i>         | 32-40<br>16-20 | "0x" or "0X" + 32-40 hexadecimal values<br>alphanumeric or ; `~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+\\{\}'':.,/<>=-   |
|                                   |                | Used in MD5 authentication keys and text authentication key                                     |
|                                   | 0-16           | alphanumeric or _-  |
|                                   |                | Used in text authentication keys  |
|                                   | 0-8            | alphanumeric or _-  |
| <i>certificate name</i>           | 1-31           | alphanumeric or ;`~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+\\{\}'':.,=-  |
| <i>community string</i>           | 0-63           | alphanumeric or .-<br>first character: alphanumeric or -  |
| <i>connection_id</i>              | 1+             | alphanumeric or _-:   |
| <i>contact</i>                    | 1-61           | alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@\$_%-.   |
| <i>country code</i>               | 0 or 2         | alphanumeric  |
| <i>custom signature file name</i> | 0-30           | alphanumeric or _-.<br>first character: letter  |
| <i>description</i>                |                | Used in keyword criteria for log entries  |
|                                   | 1-64           | alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@\$_%-.   |
|                                   |                | Used in other commands  |
|                                   | 1-61           | alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@\$_%-  |
| <i>distinguished name</i>         | 1-511          | alphanumeric, spaces, or .@=,_-   |
| <i>domain name</i>                | 0+             | lower-case letters, numbers, or .-  |
|                                   |                | Used in ip dns server   |
|                                   | 1-248          | alphanumeric or .-<br>first character: alphanumeric or -  |
|                                   |                | Used in domainname, ip dhcp pool, and ip domain   |
|                                   | 1-255          | alphanumeric or _-<br>first character: alphanumeric or -  |
| <i>email</i>                      | 1-63           | alphanumeric or .@_-  |
| <i>e-mail</i>                     | 1-64           | alphanumeric or .@_-  |
| <i>encryption key</i>             | 16-64<br>8-32  | "0x" or "0X" + 16-64 hexadecimal values<br>alphanumeric or ;\\ `~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+\\{\}'':.,/<>=- |
|                                   |                |   |
| <i>file name</i>                  | 0-31           | alphanumeric or _-  |
| <i>filter extension</i>           | 1-256          | alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@\$_%-.   |
| <i>fqdn</i>                       |                | Used in ip dns server   |
|                                   | 1-253          | alphanumeric or .-<br>first character: alphanumeric or -  |
|                                   |                | Used in ip, time server, device HA, certificates, and interface ping check                      |
|                                   | 1-255          | alphanumeric or .-<br>first character: alphanumeric or -  |
| <i>full file name</i>             | 0-256          | alphanumeric or _/.-  |

Table 10 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

| TAG                                      | # VALUES                                       | LEGAL VALUES   |
|--|--|--|
| <i>hostname</i>                          | Used in <i>hostname</i> command                |  |
|  | 1-64   | alphanumeric or <i>._-</i><br>first character: alphanumeric or <i>-</i>                                  |
|  | Used in other commands                         |  |
|  | 1-253  | alphanumeric or <i>._-</i><br>first character: alphanumeric or <i>-</i>                                  |
| <i>import configuration file</i>         | 1-26+ <i>".conf"</i>                           | alphanumeric or <i>;!@#%&amp;^&amp;()_+[]{}',.-=</i><br>add <i>".conf"</i> at the end                    |
| <i>import shell script</i>               | 1-26+ <i>".zysh"</i>                           | alphanumeric or <i>;!@#%&amp;^&amp;()_+[]{}',.-=</i><br>add <i>".zysh"</i> at the end                    |
| <i>initial string</i>                    | 1-64   | alphanumeric, spaces, or <i>'()+,/:=!*#@\$_%-.&amp;</i>  |
| <i>key length</i>                        | --   | 512, 768, 1024, 1536, 2048   |
| <i>license key</i>                       | 25   | "S-" + 6 upper-case letters or numbers + "-" + 16 upper-case letters or numbers                          |
| <i>mac address</i>                       | --   | aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff (hexadecimal)  |
| <i>mail server fqdn</i>                  |  | lower-case letters, numbers, or <i>-.</i>  |
| <i>name</i>                              | 1-31   | alphanumeric or <i>_-</i>  |
| <i>notification message</i>              | 1-81   | alphanumeric, spaces, or <i>'()+,/:=?;!#@\$_%-</i>   |
| <i>password: less than 15 chars</i>      | 1-15   | alphanumeric or <i>~!@#%&amp;^&amp;*()_+={} ~!&lt;,&gt;./</i>  |
| <i>password: less than 8 chars</i>       | 1-8  | alphanumeric or <i>/?:@&amp;=+\$\._~!*'()%,#&amp;</i>  |
| <i>password</i>                          | Used in <i>user</i> and <i>ip</i>              |  |
|  | 1-63   | alphanumeric or <i>~!@#%&amp;^&amp;*()_+={} ~!&lt;,&gt;./</i>  |
|  | Used in e-mail log profile SMTP authentication |  |
|  | 1-63   | alphanumeric or <i>~!@#%&amp;^&amp;*()_+={} ~!&lt;,&gt;./</i>  |
|  | Used in device HA synchronization              |  |
|  | 1-63   | alphanumeric or <i>~#%^*_-={:},.</i>   |
|  | Used in registration                           |  |
|  | 6-20   | alphanumeric or <i>._-</i>   |
| <i>phone number</i>                      | 1-20   | numbers or <i>,+</i>   |
| <i>preshared key</i>                     | 16-64  | "0x" or "0X" + 16-64 hexadecimal values<br>alphanumeric or <i>~!@#%&amp;^&amp;*()_+[]{}':,&lt;&gt;=-</i> |
| <i>profile name</i>                      | 1-31   | alphanumeric or <i>_-</i><br>first character: letters or <i>_-</i>                                       |
| <i>proto name</i>                        | 1-16   | lower-case letters, numbers, or <i>-</i>   |
| <i>protocol name</i>                     | 1-31   | alphanumeric or <i>_-</i><br>first character: letters or <i>_-</i>                                       |
| <i>quoted string less than 255 chars</i> | 1-255  | alphanumeric, spaces, or <i>/?:@&amp;=+\$\._~!*'()%,</i>   |
| <i>quoted string less than 63 chars</i>  | 1-63   | alphanumeric, spaces, or <i>/?:@&amp;=+\$\._~!*'()%,</i>   |

Table 10 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

| TAG  | # VALUES                    | LEGAL VALUES   |
|--|-----------------------------|--|
| <i>quoted string</i>                             | 0+                          | alphanumeric, spaces, or punctuation marks enclosed in double quotation marks (") must put a backslash (\) before double quotation marks that are part of input value itself |
| <i>realm</i>                                     | 1-253                       | alphanumeric or _<br>first character: alphanumeric or _<br>used in domain authentication   |
| <i>service name</i>                              | 0-63                        | alphanumeric or _@\$. /  |
| <i>spi</i>                                       | 2-8                         | hexadecimal  |
| <i>string less than 15 chars</i>                 | 1-15                        | alphanumeric or _  |
| <i>string: less than 63 chars</i>                | 1-63                        | alphanumeric or `~!@#\$\$%^&*()_-=+{ }\;:'<,>./  |
| <i>string</i>                                    | 1+                          | alphanumeric or _@   |
| <i>subject</i>                                   | 1-61                        | alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,./:=?;!*#@\$_%-  |
| <i>system type</i>                               | 0-2                         | hexadecimal  |
| <i>timezone [-+]hh</i>                           | --                          | -12 through +12 (with or without "+")  |
| <i>url</i>                                       | 1-511                       | alphanumeric or '()+,./:=?;!*#@\$_%-   |
| <i>url</i>                                       | "http://" +<br>"https://" + | alphanumeric or ;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*'()% ,<br>starts with "http://" or "https://"<br>may contain one pound sign (#)  |
| <i>user name</i>                                 | 1-31                        | alphanumeric or _-<br>first character: letters or _-   |
| <i>username</i>                                  | 1-31                        | alphanumeric or _-<br>first character: alphanumeric or _-<br>domain authorization  |
| <i>username</i>                                  | 6-20                        | alphanumeric or .@_-<br>registration   |
| <i>user name</i>                                 | 1+                          | alphanumeric or _.<br>logging commands   |
| <i>user@domainname</i>                           | 1-80                        | alphanumeric or .@_-   |
| <i>vrp group name: less than 15 chars</i>        | 1-15                        | alphanumeric or _-   |
| <i>week-day sequence, i.e. 1=first, 2=second</i> | 1                           | 1-4  |
| <i>xauth method</i>                              | 1-31                        | alphanumeric or _-   |
| <i>xauth password</i>                            | 1-31                        | alphanumeric or ; `~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{\}'':./<>=-  |
| <i>mac address</i>                               | 0-12 (even number)          | hexadecimal<br>for example: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx  |

## 2.8 Saving Configuration Changes

Use the `write` command to save the current configuration to the Zyxel Device.

Note: Always save the changes before you log out after each management session. All unsaved changes will be lost after the system restarts.

## 2.9 Logging Out

Enter the `exit` or `end` command in configure mode to go to privilege mode.

Enter the `exit` command in user mode or privilege mode to log out of the CLI.

# CHAPTER 3

## User and Privilege Modes

This chapter describes how to use these two modes.

### 3.1 User And Privilege Modes

This is the mode you are in when you first log into the CLI. (Do not confuse 'user mode' with types of user accounts the Zyxel Device uses. See [Chapter 9 on page 53](#) for more information about the user types. 'User' type accounts can only run 'exit' in this mode. However, they may need to log into the device in order to be authenticated for 'user-aware' policies, for example a firewall rule that a particular user is exempt from.)

Enter 'enable' to go to 'privilege mode'. No password is required. All commands can be run from here except those marked with an asterisk. Many of these commands are for trouble-shooting purposes, for example the htm (hardware test module) and debug commands. Customer support may ask you to run some of these commands and send the results if you need assistance troubleshooting your device.

For admin logins, all commands are visible in 'user mode' but not all can be run there. The following table displays which commands can be run in 'user mode'. All commands can be run in 'privilege mode'.

**The htm and psm commands are for Zyxel's internal manufacturing process.**

Table 11 User (U) and Privilege (P) Mode Commands

| COMMAND      | MODE | DESCRIPTION  |
|--------------|------|--|
| apply        | P    | Applies a configuration file.  |
| atse         | U/P  | Displays the seed code   |
| clear        | U/P  | Clears system or debug logs or DHCP binding.   |
| configure    | U/P  | Use 'configure terminal' to enter configuration mode.  |
| copy         | P    | Copies configuration files.  |
| daily-report | U/P  | Sets how and where to send daily reports and what reports to send.   |
| debug (*)    | U/P  | For support personnel only! The device needs to have the debug flag enabled.                                     |
| delete       | P    | Deletes configuration files.   |
| details      | P    | Performs diagnostic commands.  |
| diag         | P    | Provided for support personnel to collect internal system information. It is not recommended that you use these. |
| diag-info    | P    | Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.   |
| dir          | P    | Lists files in a directory.  |
| disable      | U/P  | Goes from privilege mode to user mode  |

Table 11 User (U) and Privilege (P) Mode Commands (continued)

| COMMAND         | MODE | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------|------|--|
| enable          | U/P  | Goes from user mode to privilege mode  |
| exit            | U/P  | Goes to a previous mode or logs out.   |
| htm             | U/P  | Goes to htm (hardware test module) mode for testing hardware components. You may need to use the htm commands if your customer support Engineer asks you to during troubleshooting.<br><br>Note: These commands are for Zyxel's internal manufacturing process.  |
| interface       | U/P  | Dials or disconnects an interface.   |
| no packet-trace | U/P  | Turns off packet tracing.  |
| nslookup        | U/P  | Resolves an IP address to a host name and vice-versa.  |
| packet-trace    | U/P  | Performs a packet trace.   |
| ping            | U/P  | Pings an IP address or host name.  |
| psm             | U/P  | Goes to psm (product support module) mode for setting product parameters. You may need to use the htm commands if your customer support Engineer asks you to during troubleshooting.<br><br>Note: These commands are for Zyxel's internal manufacturing process. |
| reboot          | P    | Restarts the device.   |
| release         | P    | Releases DHCP information from an interface.   |
| rename          | P    | Renames a configuration file.  |
| renew           | P    | Renews DHCP information for an interface.  |
| run             | P    | Runs a script.   |
| setenv          | U/P  | Turns stop-on-error on (terminates booting if an error is found in a configuration file) or off (ignores configuration file errors and continues booting).   |
| show            | U/P  | Displays command statistics. See the associated command chapter in this guide.   |
| shutdown        | P    | Writes all d data to disk and stops the system processes. It does not turn off the power.  |
| test aaa        | U/P  | Tests whether the specified user name can be successfully authenticated by an external authentication server.  |
| traceroute      | P    | Traces the route to the specified host name or IP address.   |
| write           | P    | Saves the current configuration to the Zyxel Device. All unsaved changes are lost after the Zyxel Device restarts.   |

Subsequent chapters in this guide describe the configuration commands. User/privilege mode commands that are also configuration commands (for example, 'show') are described in more detail in the related configuration command chapter.

### 3.1.1 Debug Commands

Debug commands marked with an asterisk (\*) are not available when the debug flag is on and are for Zyxel service personnel use only. The debug commands follow a syntax that is Linux-based, so if there is a

Linux equivalent, it is displayed in this chapter for your reference. You must know a command listed here well before you use it. Otherwise, it may cause undesired results.

Table 12 Debug Commands

| COMMAND SYNTAX   | DESCRIPTION  | LINUX COMMAND EQUIVALENT                 |
|--|--|--|
| debug app show l7protocol (*)  | Shows app patrol protocol list   | > cat /etc/l7_protocols/protocol.list    |
| debug ca (*)   | Certificate debug commands   |  |
| debug device-ha (*)  | Device HA debug commands   |  |
| debug gui (*)  | Web Configurator related debug commands  |  |
| debug hardware (*)   | Hardware debug commands  |  |
| debug interface  | Interface debug commands   |  |
| debug interface ifconfig   | Shows system interfaces detail   | > ifconfig [interface]                   |
| debug ip dns   | DNS debug commands   |  |
| debug logging  | System logging debug commands  |  |
| debug manufacture  | Manufacturing related debug commands   |  |
| debug network arpignore (*)  | Enable/Display the ignoring of ARP responses for interfaces which don't own the IP address | cat /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/*/arp_ignore |
| debug policy-route (*)   | Policy route debug command   |  |
| debug [cmdexec corefile ip kernel mac-id-rewrite observer switch system zyinetpkt] (*) | ZLD internal debug commands  |  |

---

# PART II

## Reference

---

# CHAPTER 4

## Status

This chapter explains some commands you can use to display information about the Zyxel Device's current operational state.

Table 13 Status Show Commands

| COMMAND                          | DESCRIPTION  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>show boot status</code>    | Displays details about the Zyxel Device's startup state.   |
| <code>show cpu status</code>     | Displays the CPU utilization.  |
| <code>show cpu all</code>        | Displays the CPU utilization of each CPU.  |
| <code>show disk</code>           | Displays the disk utilization.   |
| <code>show extension-slot</code> | Displays the status of the extension card slot and the USB ports and the names of any connected devices. |
| <code>show led status</code>     | Displays the status of each LED on the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>show mac</code>            | Displays the Zyxel Device's MAC address.   |
| <code>show mem status</code>     | Displays what percentage of the Zyxel Device's memory is currently being used.                           |
| <code>show ram-size</code>       | Displays the size of the Zyxel Device's on-board RAM.  |
| <code>show serial-number</code>  | Displays the serial number of this Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>show socket listen</code>  | Displays the Zyxel Device's listening ports  |
| <code>show socket open</code>    | Displays the ports that are open on the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>show system uptime</code>  | Displays how long the Zyxel Device has been running since it last restarted or was turned on.            |
| <code>show version</code>        | Displays the Zyxel Device's model, firmware and build information.                                       |

Here are examples of the commands that display the CPU and disk utilization.

Use `show cpu all` to check all the Zyxel Device CPU utilization. Use `show cpu status` to check the Zyxel Device average CPU utilization. You can use these commands to check your cpu status if you feel the Zyxel Device's performance is becoming slower

Use `show disk` to check the percentage of Zyxel Device onboard flash memory that is currently being used. You can use this command to check your disk status if you're having trouble saving files on the

Zyxel Device, such as the firmware or the packet capture files.

```
Router> show cpu status
CPU utilization: 7 %
CPU utilization for 1 min: 7 %
CPU utilization for 5 min: 7 %
Router> show cpu all
CPU core 0 utilization: 4 %
CPU core 0 utilization for 1 min: 6 %
CPU core 0 utilization for 5 min: 6 %
CPU core 1 utilization: 12 %
CPU core 1 utilization for 1 min: 14 %
CPU core 1 utilization for 5 min: 13 %
Router> show disk
No. Disk                Size(MB)                Usage
=====
1  onboard flash         3                        15%
```

Here are examples of the commands that display the MAC address, memory usage, RAM size, and serial number. You need the MAC address and serial number if you want to pass the Zyxel Device management to Nebula.

```
Router(config)# show mac
MAC address: 12:34:56:78:90:16-40:4A:03:42:70:17
Router(config)# show mem status
memory usage: 19%
Router(config)# show ram-size
ram size: 256MB
Router(config)# show serial-number
serial number: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

Here is an example of the command that displays the listening ports.

```
Router(config)# show socket listen
No.   Proto Local_Address      Foreign_Address      State
=====
1     tcp   0.0.0.0:80         0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
2     tcp   192.168.1.245:53   0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
3     tcp   127.0.0.1:53       0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
4     tcp   0.0.0.0:21         0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
5     tcp   0.0.0.0:22         0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
6     tcp   127.0.0.1:953      0.0.0.0:0           LISTEN
```

Here is an example of the command that displays the open ports.

```
Router(config)# show socket open
No.   Proto Local_Address      Foreign_Address      State
=====
1     udp   0.0.0.0:1812       0.0.0.0:0
2     udp   0.0.0.0:1814       0.0.0.0:0
3     udp   0.0.0.0:161        0.0.0.0:0
4     udp   172.23.26.245:53   0.0.0.0:0
5     0.0.1:53           0.0.0.0:0
6     udp   0.0.0.0:43386      0.0.0.0:0
7     udp   0.0.0.0:5246       0.0.0.0:0
```

Here are examples of the commands that display the system uptime and model, firmware, and build information.

```
Router> show system uptime
system uptime: 04:18:00
Router> show version
Zyxel Communications Corp.
model           : WAX650S
firmware version: 6.55(ABRM.0)b2
BM version      : 1.13
build date      : 2023-03-21 09:10:11
```

This example shows the current LED states on the Zyxel Device. The **SYS** LED lights on and green.

```
Router> show led status
sys: green
Router>
```

# CHAPTER 5

## Object Reference

This chapter describes how to use object reference commands.

### 5.1 Object Reference Commands

The object reference commands are used to see which configuration settings reference a specific object. You can use this table when you want to delete an object because you have to remove references to the object first.

Table 14 `show reference` Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show reference object username [username]</code>                    | Displays which configuration settings reference the specified user object.                  |
| <code>show reference object aaa authentication [default   profile]</code> | Displays which configuration settings reference the specified AAA authentication object.    |
| <code>show reference object ca category {local remote} [cert_name]</code> | Displays which configuration settings reference the specified authentication method object. |
| <code>show reference object [wlan-radio-profile]</code>                   | Displays the specified radio profile object.  |
| <code>show reference object [wlan-ssid-profile]</code>                    | Displays the specified SSID profile object.   |
| <code>show reference object [wlan-security-profile]</code>                | Displays the specified security profile object.   |
| <code>show reference object [wlan-macfilter-profile]</code>               | Displays the specified MAC filter profile object.   |

### 5.1.1 Object Reference Command Example

This example shows the names of the WLAN profiles and which security profile each is set to use.

```
Router(config)# show reference object aaa authentication

default References:
Category
Rule Priority      Rule Name
Description
=====
WLAN Profile SECURITY
1                  default
N/A
WWW
N/A               N/A
N/A
```

# CHAPTER 6

## Interfaces

This chapter shows you how to use interface-related commands.

### 6.1 Interface Overview

In general, an interface has the following characteristics.

- An interface is a logical entity through which (layer-3) packets pass.
- An interface is bound to a physical port or another interface.
- Many interfaces can share the same physical port.

Some characteristics do not apply to some types of interfaces.

### 6.2 Interface General Commands Summary

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 15 Input Values for General Interface Commands

| LABEL                 | DESCRIPTION   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <i>interface_name</i> | The name of the interface.<br><br>Ethernet interface: gex, x = 1 - N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet interface for your Zyxel Device model.<br><br>VLAN interface: vlanx, x = 0 - 511 |
| <i>domain_name</i>    | Fully-qualified domain name. You may up to 254 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period.   |

The following sections introduce commands that are supported by several types of interfaces.

## 6.2.1 Basic Interface Properties and IP Address Commands

This table lists basic properties and IP address commands.

Table 16 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>capwap ap vlan vlan-id &lt;1..4094&gt; &lt;tag untag&gt;</code>         | When the Zyxel Device is in managed AP mode, this sets the AP's VLAN identification number and sets it to send tagged or untagged packets.   |
| <code>interface-name {bridge_interface}<br/>user_defined_name</code>          | Specifies a name for a bridge interface. It can use alphanumeric characters, hyphens, and underscores, and it can be up to 11 characters long.<br><br><i>ethernet_interface</i> : This must be the system name of a bridge interface. Use the <code>show interface-name</code> command to see the system name of interfaces.<br><br><i>user_defined_name</i> :<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This name cannot be one of the follows: "ethernet", "ppp", "vlan", "bridge", "virtual", "wlan", "cellular", "aux", "tunnel", "status", "summary", "all"</li> <li>This name cannot begin with one of the follows either: "ge", "ppp", "vlan", "wlan-", "br", "cellular", "aux", "tunnel".</li> </ul> |
| <code>interface-rename old_user_defined_name<br/>new_user_defined_name</code> | Modifies the user-defined name of an Ethernet interface.   |
| <code>interface send statistics interval &lt;15..3600&gt;</code>              | Sets how often the Zyxel Device sends interface statistics to external servers. For example, a syslog server.  |
| <code>[no] interface interface_name</code>                                    | Creates the specified interface if necessary and enters sub-command mode. The <code>no</code> command deletes the specified interface.   |
| <code>[no] description description</code>                                     | Specifies the description for the specified interface. The <code>no</code> command clears the description.<br><br><i>description</i> : You can use alphanumeric and ( ) + / : = ? ! * # @ \$ _ % - characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.   |
| <code>[no] downstream &lt;0..1048576&gt;</code>                               | This is reserved for future use.<br><br>Specifies the downstream bandwidth for the specified interface. The <code>no</code> command sets the downstream bandwidth to 1048576.  |
| <code>exit</code>   | Leaves the sub-command mode.   |
| <code>[no] ip address dhcp</code>   | Makes the specified interface a DHCP client; the DHCP server gives the specified interface its IP address, subnet mask, and gateway. The <code>no</code> command makes the IP address static IP address for the specified interface. (See the next command to set this IP address.)  |
| <code>[no] ip address ip subnet_mask</code>                                   | Assigns the specified IP address and subnet mask to the specified interface. The <code>no</code> command clears the IP address and the subnet mask.  |

Table 16 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| [no] ip gateway <i>ip</i>   | Adds the specified gateway using the specified interface. The <b>no</b> command removes the gateway.   |
| ip gateway <i>ip</i> metric <0..15>   | Sets the priority (relative to every gateway on every interface) for the specified gateway. The lower the number, the higher the priority.   |
| [no] metric <0..15>   | Sets the interface's priority relative to other interfaces. The lower the number, the higher the priority.   |
| [no] mss <536..1460>  | Specifies the maximum segment size (MSS) the interface is to use. MSS is the largest amount of data, specified in bytes, that the interface can handle in a single, unfragmented piece. The <b>no</b> command has the interface use its default MSS. |
| [no] mtu <576..1500>  | Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit, which is the maximum number of bytes in each packet moving through this interface. The Zyxel Device divides larger packets into smaller fragments. The <b>no</b> command resets the MTU to 1500.            |
| [no] shutdown   | Deactivates the specified interface. The <b>no</b> command activates it.   |
| traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack dns} bandwidth <0..1048576> priority <1..7> {maximize-bandwidth-usage}; | Applies traffic priority when the interface sends TCP-ACK traffic, or traffic for resolving domain names. It also sets how much bandwidth the traffic can use and can turn on maximize bandwidth usage.  |
| traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack   dns} deactivate   | Turns off traffic priority settings for when the interface sends the specified type of traffic.  |
| [no] upstream <0..1048576>  | Specifies the upstream bandwidth for the specified interface. The <b>no</b> command sets the upstream bandwidth to 1048576.  |
| manager ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> {tag   untag}   | When the Zyxel Device is in standalone or cloud management mode, this sets the AP's VLAN identification number and sets it to send tagged or untagged packets.   |
| manager ap vlan ip address {ipv4_address subnet_mask   dhcp}  | Sets the management IPv4 address for the Zyxel Device.   |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 address ipv6_address/prefix   | Sets the IPv6 address and the prefix length for the LAN interface of the Zyxel Device.<br><br>The <b>no</b> command removes the IPv6 address settings.   |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request   client}  | Set the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 client or get this interface's IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.<br><br>The <b>no</b> command sets the Zyxel Device to not get this interface's IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server.                        |

Table 16 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object <i>dhcp6_profile</i></code>     | For a DHCPv6 client interface, sets the profile of DHCPv6 request settings that determine what additional information to get from the DHCPv6 server.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command removes the DHCPv6 request settings profile.   |
| <code>manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable</code>  | Enables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will generate an IPv6 address itself from a prefix obtained from an IPv6 router in the network.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command disables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.   |
| <code>manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway <i>ipv6_address</i></code>                   | Sets the IPv6 address of the default outgoing gateway.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command removes the IPv6 gateway settings.   |
| <code>manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept</code>                                  | Sets the IPv6 interface to accept IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command sets the IPv6 interface to discard IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.  |
| <code>manager ap vlan [no] ip gateway <i>ipv4_address</i></code>                     | Sets the manager gateway address. The <code>no</code> command removes the gateway.   |
| <code>manager ap vlan ip dns <i>ipv4_address</i></code>                              | Specifies a static DNS server IP address for the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>manager ap vlan no ip dns</code>   | Removes the static DNS server IP address for the Zyxel Device.<br><br>If you use this command, the Zyxel Device will use the DNS server IP address according to the Zyxel Device's current IP type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Zyxel Device is using a DHCP-assigned IP address, the Zyxel Device will use the DNS server IP address assigned by the DHCP server.</li> <li>• If the Zyxel Device is using a static IP address, the Zyxel Device will not have a DNS server IP address.</li> </ul> |
| <code>show interface {ethernet   vlan} status</code>                                 | Displays the connection status of the specified type of interfaces.  |
| <code>show interface {<i>interface_name</i>   ethernet   vlan   bridge   all}</code> | Displays information about the specified interface, specified type of interfaces, or all interfaces.   |
| <code>show interface send statistics interval</code>                                 | Displays the interval for how often the Zyxel Device refreshes the sent packet statistics for the interfaces.  |
| <code>show interface summary all</code>  | Displays basic information about the interfaces.   |
| <code>show interface summary all status</code>                                       | Displays the connection status of the interfaces.  |
| <code>show interface-name</code>   | Displays all Ethernet interface system name and user-defined name mappings.  |

Table 16 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show ipv6 interface {<i>interface_name</i>   ethernet   vlan   bridge   all}</code> | Displays information about the specified IPv6 interface, specified type of IPv6 interfaces, or all IPv6 interfaces. |
| <code>show ipv6 nd ra status <i>interface_name</i></code>                                 | Displays the specified IPv6 interface's IPv6 router advertisement configuration.                                    |
| <code>show ipv6 static address interface <i>interface_name</i></code>                     | Displays the static IPv6 addresses configured on the specified IPv6 interface.                                      |

### 6.2.1.1 Basic Interface Properties Command Examples

Use these commands to set LAN settings. Use **manager ap vlan ip address** to set the LAN interface to use a static IP address or DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol). If you set an attribute twice, the latter setting overrides the previous one.

The following example shows how to check the Internet interface status, including the current IP address used.

| Router(config)# show interface all |          |        |              |               |               |
|------------------------------------|----------|--------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| No.                                | Name     | Status | IP Address   | Mask          | IP Assignment |
| =====                              |          |        |              |               |               |
| 2                                  | lan      | Up     | 123.45.67.89 | 255.255.252.0 | DHCP client   |
| 3                                  | wlan-1   | n/a    | n/a          | n/a           | n/a           |
| 4                                  | wlan-1-1 | Up     | 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0       | static        |
| 5                                  | wlan-1-2 | Up     | 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0       | static        |

The following commands configure the LAN Ethernet interface to use IP address 1.1.1.1, netmask 255.255.255.0, and gateway address 1.2.3.4.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip gateway 1.2.3.4
```

The following command makes the LAN Ethernet interface a DHCP client. A DHCP client (your Zyxel Device) uses the IP address dynamically assigned by a DHCP server. Use this command to have the LAN Ethernet interface use a dynamic IP address.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address dhcp
```

The following command sets the Zyxel Device to use a static DNS server IP address. This is useful when the DNS server assigned by the DHCP server cannot resolve to specific domain names and you want to set the Zyxel Device to use another DNS server. For example, the Zyxel Device needs the NTP server and NCC server (d.nebula.zyxel.com/s.nebula.zyxel.com) IP addresses to connect to the NCC and go to cloud mode. Set the Zyxel Device to use the Google DNS server IP address 8.8.8.8.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip dns 8.8.8.8
```

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. You can assign a VLAN Id for the Zyxel Device to be the management VLAN Id. The Zyxel

Device only handles packets from the Ethernet port tagged with the same VLAN ID (management VLAN Id). Specify untag if you want the Zyxel Device to send outgoing packets tagged with VLAN Id through the Ethernet port.

This example sets the LAN Ethernet interface's management VLAN Id to 100, untagged.

Note: Mis-configuring the management VLAN settings in your Zyxel Device can make it inaccessible. If this happens, you'll have to reset the Zyxel Device.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan vlan-id 100 untag
```

## 6.3 Port Commands

This section covers commands that are specific to ports.

Note: In CLI, representative interfaces are also called representative ports.

Table 17 Basic Interface Setting Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>no port &lt;1..x&gt;</code>                                | Removes the specified physical port from its current representative interface and adds it to its default representative interface (for example, port <i>x</i> --> <i>ge</i> <i>x</i> ).  |
| <code>port status port_name</code>                               | Enters a sub-command mode to configure the specified port's settings.<br><br><i>port_name</i> : The name of the Ethernet port. UPLINK, or <i>lan</i> <i>x</i> , <i>x</i> = 1-N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet LAN interface for your Zyxel Device model.        |
| <code>[no] duplex &lt;full   half&gt;</code>                     | Sets the port's duplex mode. The no command returns the default setting.   |
| <code>exit</code>  | Leaves the sub-command mode.   |
| <code>[no] negotiation auto</code>                               | Sets the port to use auto-negotiation to determine the port speed and duplex. The no command turns off auto-negotiation.   |
| <code>[no] speed &lt;10, 100, 1000, 2500, 5000, 10000&gt;</code> | Sets the Ethernet port's connection speed in Mbps. The no command returns the default setting.<br><br>Not all Zyxel Device models support the 2500, 5000, 10000 Mbps connection speeds. See the product specification of your Zyxel Device for the supported connection speed. |
| <code>show port setting</code>                                   | Displays the Ethernet port negotiation, duplex, and speed settings.  |
| <code>show port status</code>                                    | Displays statistics for the Ethernet ports.  |
| <code>show port type</code>                                      | Displays the type of cable connection for each physical interface on the device.   |
| <code>show manager vlan</code>                                   | Displays the LAN interface's management interface settings.  |

## 6.3.1 Port Command Examples

The following example shows port status.

```
Router# show port status
Port Status      TxPkts      RxPkts      TxBcast      RxBcast      Colli.  TxB/s
RxB/s           Up Time      PVID
=====
====
1      1000M/Full 465      5452      411      2647      0      812
612      00:13:28      1
2      Down      0      0      0      0      0      0
00:00:00      1
3      Down      0      0      0      0      0      0
00:00:00      1
4      Down      0      0      0      0      0      0
00:00:00      1
Router#
```

The following example shows port settings.

```
Router(config)# show port setting
Port Negotiation Duplex Speed EEE
=====
====
1      auto      full      1000      no
```

The following example shows LAN settings.

```
Router(config)# show manager vlan
Management Interface:
    VLAN ID: 100
    VLAN Tag: untag
    IP Status: static
    IP Address: 192.168.1.2
    Mask: 255.255.255.0
    Gateway: 0.0.0.0
```

The following example shows each port's type of cable connection.

```
Router(config)# show port type
Port Type
=====
1      Copper
```

# CHAPTER 7

## Storm Control

This chapter shows you how to configure the traffic storm control settings on the Zyxel Device. Check the feature comparison table in [Section 1.2 on page 12](#) to see if your Zyxel Device model supports the Storm Control feature.

### 7.1 Overview

Traffic storm control limits the number of broadcast and/or multicast packets the Zyxel Device receives on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast and/or multicast packets is reached, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast and/or multicast packets in your network.

### 7.2 Storm Control Commands

The following table describes the commands available for storm control. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 18 Command Summary: Storm Control

| COMMAND                                     | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>storm-control ethernet</code>         | Enters a sub-command mode to configure the Zyxel Device's storm control settings.  |
| <code>[no] broadcast</code>                 | Enables or disables broadcast storm control, which drops broadcast packets from ingress traffic if the traffic rate exceeds the configured maximum rate.   |
| <code>broadcast pps &lt;1..10000&gt;</code> | Sets the maximum rate for broadcast traffic before storm control starts dropping broadcast packets.  |
| <code>[no] multicast</code>                 | Enables or disables multicast storm control, which drops multicast packets from ingress traffic if the traffic rate exceeds the configured maximum rate.   |
| <code>multicast pps &lt;1..10000&gt;</code> | Sets the maximum rate for multicast traffic before storm control starts dropping multicast packets.  |
| <code>no storm-control ethernet</code>      | Disables broadcast/multicast storm control on the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>show storm-control ethernet</code>    | Displays storm control settings on all Zyxel Device ports.   |
| <code>show storm-control port_name</code>   | Displays storm control settings on the specified port.<br><br><i>port_name</i> : The name of the Ethernet port. UPLINK or lanx, x = 1-N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet LAN interface for your Zyxel Device model. |

## 7.2.1 Storm Control Command Examples

The following example shows you how to enable broadcast storm control on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# storm-control ethernet
Router(storm-control)# broadcast
Router(storm-control)# exit
Router(config)#
```

The following example shows you how to display the uplink port's storm control settings. The way data is displayed may vary slightly for different models.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show storm-control UPLINK
Port: UPLINK
Storm Type 1: Multicast
Storm Suppression: Disable
Storm Type 2: Broadcast
Storm Suppression: Enable
Rate Type: pps
Rate: 100
Storming: No
Last Suppression Time: N/A
Last Recovery Time: N/A
Router(config)#
```

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show storm-control UPLINK
Port: UPLINK
Storm Type 1: Multicast
Storm Suppression: Disable
Rate Type: pps
Rate: 100
Storming: N/A
Last Suppression Time: N/A
Last Recovery Time: N/A
Storm Type 2: Broadcast
Storm Suppression: Enable
Rate Type: pps
Rate: 100
Storming: No
Last Suppression Time: N/A
Last Recovery Time: N/A
Router(config)#
```

# CHAPTER 8

## NCC Discovery

This chapter shows you how to configure the NCC discovery and proxy server settings on the Zyxel Device.

### 8.1 Overview

If your Zyxel Device can be managed through the Zyxel Nebula Control Center (NCC) and is behind a proxy server, you will need to enable NCC discovery and configure the proxy server settings so that the Zyxel Device can access the NCC through the proxy server.

### 8.2 NCC Discovery Commands

The following table describes the commands available for NCC discovery and proxy server. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 19 Command Summary: NCC Discovery

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>[no] netconf inactivate</code>  | Turns off NCC discovery on the Zyxel Device. If NCC discovery is disabled, the Zyxel Device will not discover the NCC and remain in standalone AP mode.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command turns on NCC discovery. The Zyxel Device will try to discover the NCC and go into cloud management mode when it is connected to the Internet and NCC, and has been registered in the NCC. |
| <code>[no] netconf proxy</code>   | Sets the Zyxel Device to access the NCC through the specified proxy server.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command sets the Zyxel Device to not access the NCC through the specified proxy server.   |
| <code>netconf proxy server {ip host_name}</code>  | Sets the IP address or URL of the proxy server.  |
| <code>netconf proxy port &lt;1..65535&gt;</code>  | Sets the service port number used by the proxy server.   |
| <code>[no] netconf proxy-auth</code>  | Turns on proxy authentication. The <code>no</code> command turns it off.<br><br>Enable this if the proxy server requires authentication before it grants access to the Internet.   |
| <code>netconf proxy-auth username username {password encrypted-password} {password ciphertext}</code> | Sets your proxy user name and password.  |

Table 19 Command Summary: NCC Discovery (continued)

| COMMAND                                | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show netconf proxy status</code> | Displays the proxy server settings.   |
| <code>show netconf status</code>       | Displays whether NCC discovery is enabled or not on the Zyxel Device.                                 |
| <code>show nebula ntp status</code>    | Displays the Internet connection status, NTP update status and fail messages if the connection fails. |
| <code>show nebula cloud status</code>  | Displays the Zyxel Device's connection status with NCC and fail messages if the connection fails.     |
| <code>show nebula claim status</code>  | Displays the Zyxel Device's registration status on NCC and fail messages if the connection fails.     |

## 8.2.1 NCC Discovery Command Example

The Zyxel Device will go to cloud management mode when it is connected to the Internet and NCC. Make sure you've registered your Zyxel Device on NCC.

The following example shows you how to enable NCC discovery and check the Zyxel Device NCC status.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# no netconf inactivate
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula ntp status
Nebula NTP status : success
Nebula NTP reason : NTP update succeeded
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula cloud status
Nebula Cloud status : success
Nebula Cloud reason : The device is connected to Nebula
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula claim status
Nebula Claim status : fail
Nebula Claim reason : Not registered yet, next try in 1495 seconds
```

The following example shows proxy server settings.

```
Router> show netconf proxy status
active: yes
proxy server: 172.16.15.253
proxy port: 8080
proxy-auth active: yes
proxy-auth username: Joseph
proxy-auth encrypted-password: $4$hT65kQTR$Uh8lp5zfcP7vEfm
097C5MJ6U1B47M3DIiPvb6GcrPK2kEo3R7PTChiVWl7rRi+xr0xhg8DsdTPU$
Router>
```

# CHAPTER 9

## Users

This chapter describes how to set up user accounts and user settings for the Zyxel Device. You can also set up rules that control when users have to log in to the Zyxel Device before the Zyxel Device routes traffic for them.

### 9.1 User Account Overview

A user account defines the privileges of a user logged into the Zyxel Device. User accounts are used in firewall rules and application patrol, in addition to controlling access to configuration and services in the Zyxel Device.

#### 9.1.1 User Types

These are the types of user accounts the Zyxel Device uses.

Table 20 Types of User Accounts

| TYPE          | ABILITIES  | LOGIN METHOD(S)         |
|---------------|--|-------------------------|
| Admin Users   |  |                         |
| admin         | Modify Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI)   | WWW, SSH, FTP, Console, |
| limited-admin | Verify Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI)<br>Perform basic diagnostics (CLI)                      | WWW, SSH, Console       |
| Access Users  |  |                         |
| user          | Used for the embedded RADIUS server and<br>SNMPv3 user access<br><br>Browse user-mode commands (CLI) |                         |

### 9.2 User Commands Summary

The following table identify the values required for many `username` commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 21 user Command Input Values

| LABEL                 | DESCRIPTION   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>username</code> | The name of the user (account). You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive and must be unique. |

The following sections list the `username` commands.

## 9.2.1 Username and User Commands

The first table lists the commands for users.

Table 22 username Commands Summary: Users

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show username [username]</code>   | Displays information about the specified user or about all users set up in the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>username username nopassword user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}</code>                              | Creates a user with the specified type and username, and no password.<br><br>If the user already exists, this command removes the user's password and changes the user type.  |
| <code>username username password password user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}</code>                       | Creates a user with the specified user type, username, and password.<br><br>If the user already exists, this command changes the user's type and password.<br><br><i>password</i> :: Use 1-63 printable ASCII characters, except double quotation marks (") and question marks (?). |
| <code>username username logon-due-time time</code>  | <i>time</i> : HH:MM in 24-hour time format.   |
| <code>username username encrypted-password &lt; ciphertext &gt; user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}</code> | Sets a user account password by ciphertext.   |
| <code>username username nopassword user-type {admin   guest   guest-manager   limited-admin   user}</code>              | Creates a user with the specified type and username, and no password.<br><br>If the user already exists, this command removes the user's password and changes the user type.  |
| <code>username username password password user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}</code>                       | Creates a user with the specified user type, username, and password.<br><br>If the user already exists, this command changes the user's type and password.<br><br><i>password</i> : Use 1-63 printable ASCII characters, except double quotation marks (") and question marks (?).  |
| <code>username username user-type ext-user</code>   | Creates the specified user (if it does not already exist) and sets the user type to <b>Ext-User</b> .   |
| <code>no username username</code>   | Deletes the specified user.   |
| <code>username rename username username</code>  | Renames the specified user (first <i>username</i> ) to the specified username (second <i>username</i> ).  |
| <code>username username [no] description description</code>   | Sets the description for the specified user. The <code>no</code> command clears the description.<br><br><i>description</i> : Use alphanumeric and ( ) + / : = ? ! * # @ \$ _ % - characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.  |

Table 22 username Commands Summary: Users (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>username username encrypted-password &lt;password&gt;</code>         | <p>Sets a user account password by ciphertext.</p> <p>Normally you would use <code>username password &lt;clear text&gt;</code> to set the password.</p> <p>In special case cases (for GUI apply), you can use <code>username encrypted-password &lt;ciphertext&gt;</code> to set password.</p>  |
| <code>username username logon-time-setting &lt;default   manual&gt;</code> | Sets the account to use the factory default lease and reauthentication times or custom ones.  |
| <code>username username [no] logon-lease-time &lt;0..1440&gt;</code>       | <p>Enter the number of minutes the user has to renew the current session before the user is logged out.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes.</li> <li>Specify 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited.</li> <li>The <code>no</code> command sets the lease time to five minutes, regardless of the current default setting for new users.</li> </ul>                       |
| <code>username username [no] logon-re-auth-time &lt;0..1440&gt;</code>     | <p>Enter the maximum number of minutes the user can be logged in to the Zyxel Device before the user is logged out.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes.</li> <li>Specify 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited.</li> <li>The <code>no</code> command sets the reauthorization time to five minutes, regardless of the current default setting for new users.</li> </ul> |

## 9.2.2 User Setting Commands

This table lists the commands for user settings.

Table 23 users Commands Summary: Settings

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>show users default-setting user-type {admin   limited-admin  guest  ext-user  user}}</code> | Displays the default lease and reauthentication times for the specified type of user accounts.   |
| <code>show users default-setting all</code>   | Displays the default lease and reauthentication times for all types of user account.   |
| <code>users default-setting [no] logon-lease-time &lt;0..1440&gt;</code>                          | Sets the default lease time (in minutes) for each new user. Set it to zero to set unlimited lease time. The <code>no</code> command sets the default lease time to five.                                 |
| <code>users default-setting [no] logon-re-auth-time &lt;0..1440&gt;</code>                        | Sets the default reauthorization time (in minutes) for each new user. Set it to zero to set unlimited reauthorization time. The <code>no</code> command sets the default reauthorization time to thirty. |
| <code>users default-setting [no] user-type &lt;admin   limited-admin&gt;</code>                   | Sets the default user type for each new user. The <code>no</code> command sets the default user type to user.  |

Table 23 users Commands Summary: Settings (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| [no] password complexity-verify   | Enforces a complex user password consisting of at least 8 characters and at most 64. The password must have: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At least 1 upper case letter.</li> <li>At least 1 lower case letter.</li> <li>At least 1 number</li> <li>At least 1 special character from the keyboard, such as <code>`~!@#\$%^&amp;*()_+={} ;':&lt;,&gt;./\`"</code></li> </ul> |
| show password complexity-verify status                                  | Displays if the password complexity rule is enabled.  |
| show users retry-settings   | Displays the current retry limit settings for users.  |
| [no] users retry-limit  | Enables the retry limit for users. The <code>no</code> command disables the retry limit.  |
| [no] users retry-count <1..99>  | Sets the number of failed login attempts a user can have before the account or IP address is locked out for lockout-period minutes. The <code>no</code> command sets the retry-count to five.   |
| [no] users lockout-period <1..65535>                                    | Sets the amount of time, in minutes, a user or IP address is locked out after retry-count number of failed login attempts. The <code>no</code> command sets the lockout period to thirty minutes.   |
| show users simultaneous-logon-settings                                  | Displays the current settings for simultaneous logins by users.   |
| [no] users simultaneous-logon {administration   access} enforce         | Enables the limit on the number of simultaneous logins by users of the specified account-type. The <code>no</code> command disables the limit, or allows an unlimited number of simultaneous logins.  |
| [no] users simultaneous-logon {administration   access} limit <1..1024> | Sets the limit for the number of simultaneous logins by users of the specified account-type. The <code>no</code> command sets the limit to one.   |

### 9.2.2.1 User Setting Command Examples

The following commands show the current settings for the number of simultaneous logins.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show users simultaneous-logon-settings
enable simultaneous logon limitation for administration account: no
maximum simultaneous logon per administration account           : 1
```

### 9.2.3 Additional User Commands

This table lists additional commands for users.

Table 24 users Commands Summary: Additional

| COMMAND                               | DESCRIPTION  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| show users {username   all   current} | Displays information about the users logged onto the system. |
| show lockout-users                    | Displays users who are currently locked out.                 |

Table 24 users Commands Summary: Additional (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION                       |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <code>unlock lockout-users ip   console</code> | Unlocks the specified IP address. |
| <code>users force-logout ip   username</code>  | Logs out the specified logins.    |

### 9.2.3.1 Additional User Command Examples

The following commands display the users that are currently logged in to the Zyxel Device and forces the logout of all logins from a specific IP address.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show users all
No.  Name           Type      From
    Service      Session Time Idle Time   Lease Timeout Re-Auth. Timeout
=====
1    admin          admin     172.17.16.101
    http/https 04:31:01   unlimited unlimited unlimited
2    admin          admin     console
    console   04:23:51   unlimited unlimited unlimited
Router(config)# users force-logout 172.17.16.101
Logout user 'admin'(from 172.17.16.101): OK
Total 1 user has been forced logout
Router(config)# show users all
No.  Name           Type      From
    Service      Session Time Idle Time   Lease Timeout Re-Auth. Timeout
=====
1    admin          admin     console
    console   04:24:55   unlimited unlimited unlimited
```

The following commands display the users that are currently locked out and then unlocks the user who is displayed.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show lockout-users
No.  Username Tried      From      Lockout Time Remaining
=====
No.  From      Failed Login Attempt   Record Expired Timer
=====
1    172.17.13.60    2          46

Router(config)# unlock lockout-users 172.17.13.60
User from 172.17.13.60 is unlocked
Router(config)# show lockout-users
No.  Username Tried      From      Lockout Time Remaining
=====
No.  From      Failed Login Attempt   Record Expired Timer
=====
```

# CHAPTER 10

## AP Management

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless AP management options on your Zyxel Device.

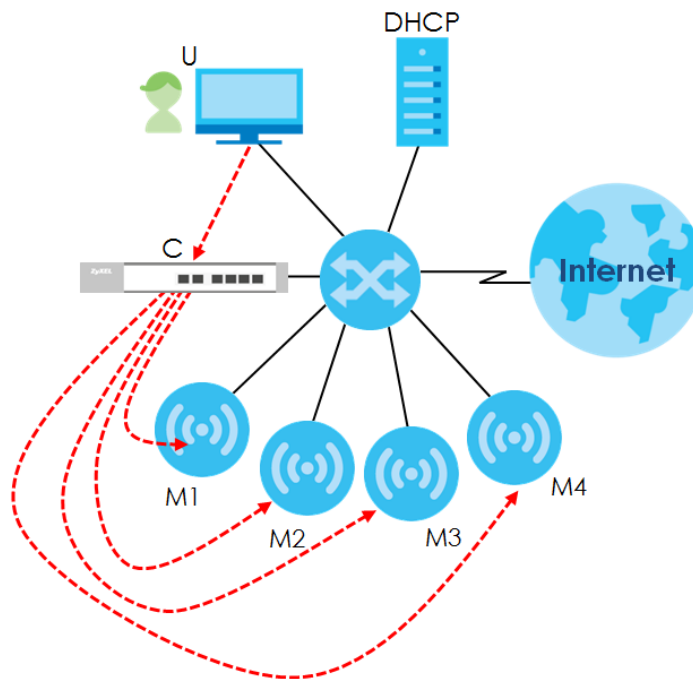
### 10.1 AP Management Overview

The Zyxel Device supports CAPWAP. This is Zyxel's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol (RFC 5415). The CAPWAP data flow is protected by Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS).

The Zyxel Device can be a standalone AP (default), or a CAPWAP managed AP.

The following figure illustrates a CAPWAP wireless network. The user (**U**) configures the AP controller (**C**), which then automatically updates the configurations of the managed APs (**M1 ~ M4**).

**Figure 9** CAPWAP Network Example



#### CAPWAP Discovery and Management

The link between CAPWAP-enabled access points proceeds as follows:

- 1 An AP in managed AP mode joins a wired network (receives a dynamic IP address).

- 2 The AP sends out a discovery request, looking for a CAPWAP AP controller.
- 3 If there is an AP controller on the network, it receives the discovery request. If the AP controller is in **Manual** mode it adds the details of the AP to its **Unmanaged Access Points** list, and you decide which available APs to manage. If the AP controller is in **Always Accept** mode, it automatically adds the AP to its **Managed Access Points** list and provides the managed AP with default configuration information, as well as securely transmitting the DTLS pre-shared key. The managed AP is ready for association with WiFi clients.

## Managed AP Finds the Controller

A managed Zyxel Device can find the controller in one of the following ways:

- Manually specify the controller's IP address in the Web Configurator's **AC (AP Controller) Discovery** screen or using the `capwap ap ac-ip` command.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DHCP server with the controller's IP address configured as option 138.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DNS server SRV (Service) record.
- Broadcasting to discover the controller within the broadcast domain.

Note: The AP controller needs to have a static IP address. If it is a DHCP client, set the DHCP server to reserve an IP address for the AP controller.

## CAPWAP and IP Subnets

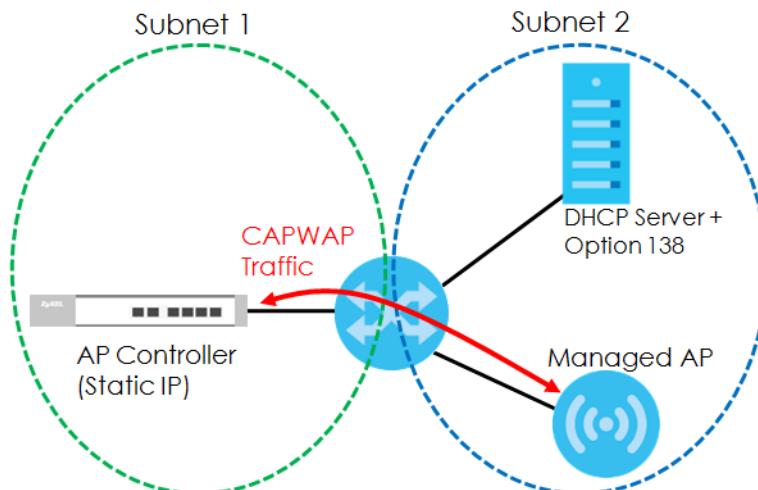
By default, CAPWAP works only between devices with IP addresses in the same subnet.

However, you can configure CAPWAP to operate between devices with IP addresses in different subnets by doing the following.

- Activate DHCP. Your network's DHCP server must support option 138 defined in RFC 5415.
- Configure DHCP option 138 with the IP address of the CAPWAP AP controller on your network.

DHCP Option 138 allows the CAPWAP management request (from the AP in managed AP mode) to reach the AP controller in a different subnet, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 10** CAPWAP and DHCP Option 138



## Notes on CAPWAP

This section lists some additional features of Zyxel's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol.

- When the AP controller uses its internal Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) server, managed APs also use the AP controller's authentication server to authenticate WiFi clientWiFi clients.
- If a managed AP's link to the AP controller is broken, the managed AP continues to use the wireless settings with which it was last provided.

## 10.2 AP Management Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 25 Input Values for General AP Management Commands

| LABEL                 | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>ap_mac</i>         | The Ethernet MAC address of the managed AP. Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.   |
| <i>slot_name</i>      | The slot name for the AP's on-board wireless LAN card. Use either <i>slot1</i> , <i>slot2</i> , or <i>slot3</i> .<br><br>Note: The number of radio slots differ by models. See <a href="#">Section 1.2 on page 12</a> for the supported radio number.        |
| <i>profile_name</i>   | The wireless LAN radio profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.  |
| <i>ap_description</i> | The AP description. This is strictly used for reference purposes and has no effect on any other settings. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <i>sta_mac</i>        | The Ethernet MAC address of the managed station (or WiFi client). Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.   |

The following table describes the commands available for AP management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands. See [Section 11.1 on page 70](#) for more information about WLAN profiles the radios use.

Table 26 Command Summary: AP Management

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>wlan slot_name</code>                      | Enters the sub-command mode for the specified radio on the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>[no] activate</code>                       | Enables the specified radio. The <code>no</code> command disables the radio.                                     |
| <code>ap profile radio_profile_name</code>       | Sets the radio ( <i>slot_name</i> ) to AP mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio.                 |
| <code>output-power &lt;0..30&gt;</code>          | Sets the output power (between 0 to 30 dBm) for the specified radio.   |
| <code>repeater profile radio_profile_name</code> | Sets the specified radio ( <i>slot_name</i> ) to repeater mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio. |
| <code>rootap profile radio_profile_name</code>   | Sets the specified radio ( <i>slot_name</i> ) to root AP mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio.  |

Table 26 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>ssid profile index <i>ssid_profile_name</i></code>         | Assigns an SSID profile to this radio. Requires an existing SSID profile.  |
| <code>wds_profile <i>wds_profile_name</i></code>                 | Selects the WDS profile the radio (in repeater or root AP mode) uses to connect to a root AP or repeater.  |
| <code>wds_uplink {auto   manual bssid <i>mac_address</i>}</code> | <p>Sets how the radio (in repeater mode) connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> <p><b>auto:</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically use the settings in the applied WDS profile to connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> <p><b>manual:</b> to have the Zyxel Device connect to the root AP or repeater with the specified MAC address. You need to configure the MAC address of the root AP or repeater with which you want the Zyxel Device to associate.</p>   |
| <code>wireless-bridge {enable   disable}</code>                  | <p>Enables or disables wireless bridging on the specified radio (<i>slot_name</i>). The Zyxel Device must support LAN provision and the radio must be in repeater mode. VLAN and bridge interfaces are created automatically according to the LAN port's VLAN settings.</p> <p>When wireless bridging is enabled, the Zyxel Device in repeater mode can still transmit data through its Ethernet port(s) after the WDS link is up. This allows you to extend your wired network to a new area wirelessly, when it is difficult to run cables to that area.</p> <p>The Zyxel Devices in the same WDS must use the same management VLAN ID.</p> <p>Traffic with VLAN ID tags can only pass through or go to the Zyxel Devices with the same VLAN ID tags. When you enable wireless bridge on the specified radio, make sure to set the same VLAN IDs for the devices in your network below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Root AP.</li> <li>• Repeater AP.</li> <li>• Other Zyxel Devices the traffic might pass through.</li> </ul> <p>Note: Be careful to avoid bridge loops. A bridge loop occurs when there are two layer-2 paths between the same endpoints, causing broadcast packets to be send back and forth indefinitely.</p> |
| <code>wireless-bridge vlan</code>                                | Enters the sub-command mode to configure wireless bridge VLAN ID table.  |
| <code>[no] vlanid &lt;1..4094&gt;</code>                         | <p>Adds a VLAN ID to the wireless bridge VLAN ID table.</p> <p>The <b>no</b> command removes the specified VLAN ID from the wireless bridge VLAN ID table.</p>   |
| <code>exit</code>  | Exits the sub-command mode of wireless bridge VLAN configuration.  |
| <code>show wireless-bridge vlan table</code>                     | Displays the VLAN IDs you configured in the wireless bridge VLAN ID table.   |

Table 26 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>show wireless-bridge port type</code>  | Displays the Zyxel Device's type (indoor or outdoor) and number of Ethernet ports.<br><br>Displays if the Zyxel Device supports wireless bridge.   |
| <code>show wlan slot_name</code>   | Displays the operating mode and profile settings for the specified radio.  |
| <code>show wlan slot_name detail</code>  | Displays the SSID, MAC address, VLAN ID and security mode for the specified radio.   |
| <code>show wlan slot_name list all sta</code>  | Displays statistics for the specified radio's wireless traffic.  |
| <code>show wlan country-code</code>  | Displays the country code of the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>show wlan channels {11A 11G}</code>  | Displays the channels available for the specified frequency band.  |
| <code>show wlan channels {11A 11G 6G} [cw {20 20/40 20/40/80 20/40/80/160}] [country country_code] [indoor outdoor psc]</code> | Displays the channels available for the specified frequency band, channel width, and/or country. You can also specify whether the channels are for indoor/outdoor use or PSCs (Preferred Scanning Channels).<br><br>Note: PSCs are for the 6 GHz band only.<br><br>At the time of writing, the available frequency bands are 11A (2.4 GHz), 11G (5 GHz), and 6G (6 GHz). See <a href="#">Section 1.2 on page 12</a> for your Zyxel Device supported frequency bands. |
| <code>show wlan radio macaddr</code>   | Displays the MAC address(es) assigned to the Zyxel Device's radio(s).  |
| <code>show wireless-hal current channel</code>   | Displays the channel number the Zyxel Device's radio is using.   |
| <code>show wireless-hal station info</code>  | Displays the connected station information of the Zyxel Device's radio.  |
| <code>show wireless-hal station number</code>  | Displays the number of WiFi clients that are currently connected to the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>show wireless-hal statistic</code>   | Displays the overall traffic information of the Zyxel Device's radio.  |
| <code>show wireless-hal wds info {all   downlink   uplink}</code>  | Displays the WDS traffic statistics between the Zyxel Device and a root AP or repeaters<br><br>Uplink refers to the WDS link from the repeaters to the root AP.<br><br>Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP to the repeaters.  |
| <code>show wireless-hal wds interface {all   downlink   uplink}</code>   | Displays status information for the WDS links.<br><br>Uplink refers to the WDS link from the repeaters to the root AP.<br><br>Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP to the repeaters.   |
| <code>show wireless-hal wds number</code>  | Displays the number of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS.   |

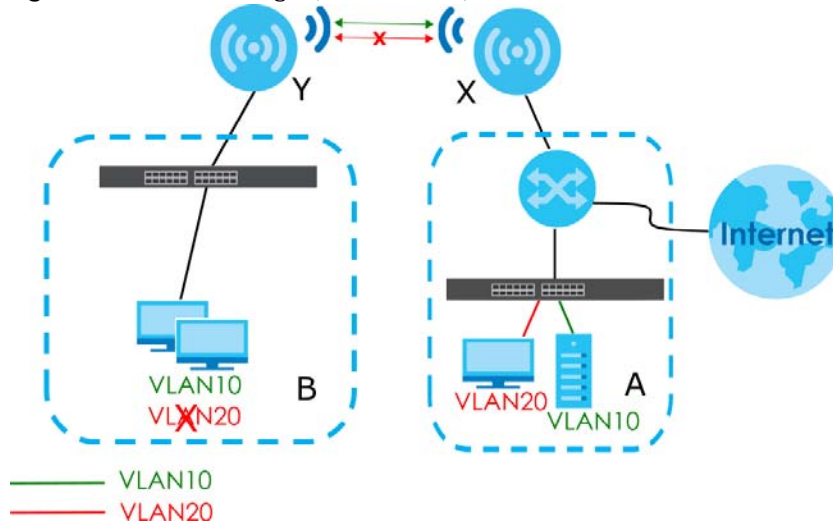
## 10.2.1 AP Management Commands Example

The followings are some AP management command examples.

### Wireless Bridge Network Example

The following figure shows you how to wirelessly extend a wired network with wireless bridge.

**Figure 11** Wireless Bridge (with VLAN10)



Suppose you have **Network A** at your main office and **Network B** at the branch office:

- **Network A** consists of client **A** devices, a root AP (**X**) and a gateway. Client **A** devices, **X**, and the gateway are connected using wired connections through a switch.
- **Network B** consists of client **B** devices, a repeater (**Y**) and a switch. Client **B** devices and **Y** are connected using wired connections through the switch.

The following example shows you how to combine **Network A** and **Network B** into one wireless bridge network.

Note: The switches must also have the same VLAN settings.

You must use the same radio for root AP and repeater. In this example, we use radio 1.

- 1 Set the AP **X** to root AP mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role rootap
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Router(config)#
```

- 2** Set the AP **Y** to repeater mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role repeater
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Router(config)#
```

- 3** Create WDS profiles on both root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**). The WDS profile settings must be the same on **X** and **Y**.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-wds-profile WDS_profile1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# ssid WDS_SSID1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# psk 13245768
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# exit
Router(config)#
```

- 4** Apply the WDS profiles on both root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**).

```

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds_profile WDS_profile1
WDS_Role rootap
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Router(config)#

```

- 5 Enable wireless bridge on repeater (**Y**). You can only transmit data through **Y**'s LAN ports when wireless bridge is enabled.

The Zyxel Devices build WDS connection and a wireless bridge network between Network **A** and Network **B** after the settings are applied. Use `show wireless-hal wds info {uplink|downlink}` to check the WDS link status.

```

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot1)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wireless-bridge enable
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)#

```

## Wireless Bridge VLAN IDs

VLAN IDs are sent across the wireless bridge so that only clients with the same VLAN IDs receive that network traffic.

This example follows the parameters below:

- Network **A** is using VLAN ID 10 and VLAN ID 20.
- Network **B** is only using VLAN ID 10.
- We only want the traffic of VLAN 10 to pass through the wireless bridge.

Please note that you need to create the same VLAN IDs on both the root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**).

```

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#
Router(config)# wireless-bridge vlan
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)#
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)# vlanid 10
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)#
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)# exit
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show wireless-bridge vlan table
no.   Wireless-Bridge-VID
=====
1     10
Router(config)#

```

## Wireless Connection and Traffic Information Example

The following commands display:

- number of currently connected WiFi clients
- connection information
- overall traffic information of the Zyxel Device's radio.

Use these commands to monitor the current wireless LAN status and connection of the Zyxel Device.

The following command displays the number of currently connected WiFi clients of each radio slot (**Slot1** - 2.4 GHz, **Slot2** - 5 GHz).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show wireless-hal station number
Slot1: 0
Slot2: 1
```

The following command displays the identity information of currently connected clients and connection details. This can help you identify the WiFi clients connected to the Zyxel Device and check on respective connection statuses.

```
Router# configure terminal
!Shows the connected clients' info & connection info
Router(config)# show wireless-hal station info
index: 0
  MAC: a1:bc:2d:3e:f4:56
  IPv4: 123.45.67.89
  Slot: 2
  SSID: Zyxel
  Security: WPA2-PSK
  TxRate: 866M
  RxRate: 650M
  RSSI: 100
  RSSI dBm: -44
  Time: 13:11:21 2023/03/01
  VapIdx: 1
  Capability: 802.11ac
  DOT11 features: N/A
  Display SSID: Zyxel
```

The following command displays the overall throughput, traffic and signal information. You can use this command to check if there is any abnormal traffic or connection error.

```
Router# configure terminal
!Shows the overall traffic info
Router(config)# show wireless-hal statistic
Slot: 1
  ReceivedPktCount: 0
  TransmittedPktCount: 0
  wlanReceivedByte: 0
  wlanTransmittedByte: 0
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 24
  Channel Utilization: 61
Slot: 2
  ReceivedPktCount: 8053
  TransmittedPktCount: 24746
  wlanReceivedByte: 3302967
  wlanTransmittedByte: 3203254
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 193
  TxPower: 23
  Channel Utilization: 14
```

## 10.3 AP Management Client Commands

The following table describes the commands available for configuring CAPWAP AP settings. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 27 Command Summary: CAPWAP AP Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>capwap ap ac-ip {primary ip secondary ip   auto}</code>          | Sets the AP controller's address or sets the Zyxel Device (in managed mode) to use DHCP option 138 to get the AP controller's IP address.  |
| <code>capwap ap vlan ip address {ip subnet_mask   dhcp}</code>         | Sets the IP address of the Zyxel Device or sets it to use DHCP.  |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ip gateway ip</code>                         | Adds the gateway address of the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command removes the gateway setting.   |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 address ipv6_addr/prefix</code>         | Sets the IPv6 address and the prefix length of the Zyxel Device.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command removes the IPv6 address settings.   |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request   client}</code> | Set the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 client or get an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command sets the Zyxel Device to not get the IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server. |

Table 27 Command Summary: CAPWAP AP Commands (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object <i>dhcp6_profile</i></code> | Sets the profile of DHCPv6 request settings that determine what additional information to get from the DHCPv6 server.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command removes the DHCPv6 request settings profile.  |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable</code>                                    | Enables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will generate an IPv6 address itself from a prefix obtained from an IPv6 router in the network.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command disables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.   |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway <i>ipv6_addr</i></code>                  | Sets the IPv6 address of the default outgoing gateway.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command removes the IPv6 gateway settings.   |
| <code>capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept</code>                              | Sets the Zyxel Device to accept IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.<br><br>The <code>no</code> command sets the Zyxel Device to discard IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.  |
| <code>capwap ap vlan vlan-id &lt;1..4094&gt; [tag   untag]</code>               | Sets the VLAN ID and tagging setting of the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>hybrid-mode [managed   standalone]</code>                                 | Sets the Zyxel Device to act as a CAPWAP managed AP, or uses it in its default standalone mode.<br><br>When the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode, you can manage the Zyxel Device using its own web configurator or commands.<br><br>When the Zyxel Device is in managed mode, it can be configured ONLY by the AP controller. |
| <code>show capwap ap info</code>  | Displays information about the Zyxel Device's wireless usage.  |
| <code>show capwap ap discovery-type</code>                                      | Displays how the Zyxel Device gets its IP address.   |
| <code>show capwap ap ac-ip</code>   | Displays the controller's IP address.  |
| <code>show hybrid-mode</code>   | Displays the Zyxel Device management mode.   |

### 10.3.1 AP Management Client Commands Example

The following example shows you how to configure the Zyxel Device management mode to allow it to be managed by an AP controller and check the Zyxel Device management mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# hybrid-mode managed
Router(config)# show hybrid-mode
mode: managed
Router(config)#
```

The following example shows you how to configure the interface of the Zyxel Device, set the AP controller IP address and display the related settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show capwap_wtp ap discovery-type
Discovery type : Broadcast
Router(config)# capwap ap vlan ip address 192.168.1.37 255.255.255.0
Router(config)# capwap ap vlan ip gateway 192.168.1.32
Router(config)# capwap ap ac-ip 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.2
Router(config)# show capwap ap discovery-type
Discovery type : Static AC IP
Router(config)# show capwap ap ac-ip
AC IP: 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.2
Router(config)# exit
Router# show capwap ap info
      SM-State          RUN(8)
msg-buf-usage          0/10 (Usage/Max)
capwap-version          10118
Radio Number           1/4 (Usage/Max)
BSS Number              8/8 (Usage/Max)
IANA ID                 037a
Description             AP-0013499999FF
```

# CHAPTER 11

## Wireless LAN Profiles

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless LAN profiles on your Zyxel Device.

### 11.1 Wireless LAN Profiles Overview

The Zyxel Devices are designed to work explicitly with your Zyxel Devices. If you do not have on-board configuration files, you must create “profiles” to manage them. Profiles are preset configurations that are uploaded to the APs and which manage them. They include: Radio profiles, SSID profiles, Security profiles, and MAC Filter profiles. Altogether, these profiles give you absolute control over your wireless network.

### 11.2 AP Radio Profile Commands

The radio profile commands allow you to set up configurations for the radios onboard your various APs.

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 28 Input Values for General Radio Profile Commands

| LABEL                      | DESCRIPTION  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>radio_profile_name</i>  | The radio profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.  |
| <i>wireless_channel_2g</i> | Sets the 2.4 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is 1 ~ 14.<br><br>Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations.   |
| <i>wireless_channel_5g</i> | Sets the 5 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is 36 ~ 165.<br><br>Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations.   |
| <i>wireless_channel_6g</i> | Sets the 6 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is 1 ~ 233.<br><br>Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations.<br><br>Note: The available channels on the 6 GHz band are PSCs (Preferred Scanning Channels). PSCs are dedicated channels for WiFi clients to send probe requests on to discover a compatible AP, instead of scanning the entire 6 GHz band. |
| <i>wlan_cw</i>             | Sets the channel width. Select either 20, 20/40, 20/40/80, or 20/40/80/160.  |
| <i>wlan_htgi</i>           | Sets the HT guard interval. Select either long or short.   |

Table 28 Input Values for General Radio Profile Commands (continued)

| LABEL                          | DESCRIPTION  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>chain_mask</i>              | Sets the network traffic chain mask. The range is 1 ~ 7.           |
| <i>wlan_interface_index</i>    | Sets the radio interface index number. The range is 1 ~ 8.         |
| <i>wds_lan_interface_index</i> | Sets the AP-WDS mode interface's index number. The range is 1 ~ 8. |

The following table describes the commands available for radio profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show wlan-radio-profile {all / rule_count   [radio_profile_name]}</code> | Displays the radio profile(s).<br><br><i>all</i> : Displays all radio profiles created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br><i>rule_count</i> : Displays how many radio profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br><i>radio_profile_name</i> : Displays the specified radio profile.   |
| <code>wlan-radio-profile rename radio_profile_name1 radio_profile_name2</code> | Gives an existing radio profile ( <i>radio_profile_name1</i> ) a new name ( <i>radio_profile_name2</i> ).   |
| <code>[no] wlan-radio-profile radio_profile_name</code>                        | Enters configuration mode for the specified radio profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove the specified profile.   |
| <code>2g-channel wireless_channel_2g</code>                                    | Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 2.4 Ghz frequency range. The default is 6.  |
| <code>2g-multicast-speed wlan_2g_support_speed</code>                          | When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {1.0   2.0   ...} in Mbps for 2.4 GHz multicast traffic.   |
| <code>2g-wlan-rate-control rate_2g</code>                                      | Sets the minimum data rate that 2.4 Ghz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps.<br><br><i>rate_2g</i> : At the time of writing, allowed values are – 1, 2, 5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54.<br><br>Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP. |
| <code>5g-channel wireless_channel_5g</code>                                    | Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 5 GHz frequency range.  |
| <code>5g-multicast-speed wlan_5g_basic_speed</code>                            | When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {6.0   9.0   ...} in Mbps for 5 GHz multicast traffic.   |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>5g-wlan-rate-control rate_5g</code>                                      | <p>Sets the minimum data rate that 5 GHz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps.</p> <p><i>rate_5g</i>: At the time of writing, allowed values are – 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54.</p> <p>Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP.</p>  |
| <code>6g-channel wireless_channel_6g</code>                                    | Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 6 GHz frequency range.  |
| <code>6g-multicast-speed<br/>wlan_6g_basic_speed</code>                        | When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {6.0   9.0   ...   54.0} in Mbps for 6 GHz multicast traffic.  |
| <code>6g-wlan-rate-control rate_6g</code>                                      | <p>Sets the minimum data rate that 6 GHz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps.</p> <p><i>rate_6g</i>: At the time of writing, the allowed values are – 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54.</p> <p>Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP.</p>  |
| <code>[no] activate</code>   | Makes this profile active or inactive.  |
| <code>[no] ampd</code>   | <p>Activates MPDU frame aggregation for this profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable it.</p> <p>Message Protocol Data Unit (MPDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames along with their 802.11n headers and wraps them in a 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput in environments that are prone to high error rates.</p> <p>By default this is enabled.</p>  |
| <code>[no] amsdu</code>  | <p>Activates MPDU frame aggregation for this profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable it.</p> <p>Mac Service Data Unit (MSDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames without any of their 802.11n headers and wraps the header-less payload in a single 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput. It is also more efficient than A-MPDU except in environments that are prone to high error rates.</p> <p>By default this is enabled.</p> |
| <code>band wlan_band band-mode<br/>wlan_band_mode</code>                       | <p>Sets the radio band and 802.11 wireless mode for this profile.</p> <p><i>wlan_band</i>: 2.4G, 5G, 6G</p> <p><i>wlan_band_mode</i>: bg, bgn, bgnax, bgnaxbe, a, ac, an, anacax, anacaxbe, ax, be</p>  |
| <code>ch-width &lt;20  20/40  20/40/80  20/40/<br/>80/160  240  320&gt;</code> | Sets the channel width for this profile.  |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>beacon-interval &lt;40..1000&gt;</code>        | <p>Sets the beacon interval for this profile.</p> <p>When a wirelessly networked device sends a beacon, it includes with it a beacon interval. This specifies the time period before the device sends the beacon again. The interval tells receiving devices on the network how long they can wait in low-power mode before waking up to handle the beacon. This value can be set from 40ms to 1000ms. A high value helps save current consumption of the access point.</p> <p>The default is 100.</p>  |
| <code>[no] block-ack</code>                          | Makes <code>block-ack</code> active or inactive. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable it.   |
| <code>bss-color &lt;0..63&gt;</code>                 | Sets the BSS color of the Zyxel Device, which distinguishes it from other nearby APs when they transmit over the same channel. Set it to 0 to automatically assign a BSS color.   |
| <code>[no] disable-bss-color</code>                  | <p>Disables BSS coloring.</p> <p>Use the <code>no</code> command to enable BSS coloring.</p>  |
| <code>[no] ctsrts &lt;0..2347&gt;</code>             | <p>Sets or removes the RTS/CTS value for this profile.</p> <p>Use RTS/CTS to reduce data collisions on the wireless network if you have WiFi clients that are associated with the same AP but out of range of one another. When enabled, a WiFi client sends an RTS (Request To Send) and then waits for a CTS (Clear To Send) before it transmits. This stops WiFi clients from transmitting packets at the same time (and causing data collisions).</p> <p>A WiFi client sends an RTS for all packets larger than the number (of bytes) that you enter here. Set the RTS/CTS equal to or higher than the fragmentation threshold to turn RTS/CTS off.</p> <p>The default is 2347.</p> |
| <code>dcs time-interval <i>interval</i></code>       | Sets the interval that specifies how often DCS should run.  |
| <code>dcs sensitivity-level {high medium low}</code> | Sets how sensitive DCS is to radio channel changes in the vicinity of the AP running the scan.  |
| <code>dcs client-aware {enable disable}</code>       | When enabled, this ensures that the Zyxel Device will not change channels as long as a client is connected to it. If disabled, the Zyxel Device may change channels regardless of whether it has clients connected to it or not.  |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>dcs channel-deployment {3-channel 4-channel}</code> | <p>Sets either a 3-channel deployment or a 4-channel deployment.</p> <p>In a 3-channel deployment, the AP running the scan alternates between the following channels: 1, 6, and 11.</p> <p>In a 4-channel deployment, the AP running the scan alternates between the following channels: 1, 4, 7, and 11 (FCC) or 1, 5, 9, and 13 (ETSI).</p> <p>Set the option that is applicable to your region. (Channel deployment may be regulated differently between countries and locales.)</p>  |
| <code>dcs 2g-selected-channel 2.4g_channels</code>        | Specifies the channels that are available in the 2.4 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.   |
| <code>dcs 5g-selected-channel 5g_channels</code>          | Specifies the channels that are available in the 5 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.   |
| <code>dcs 6g-selected-channel 6g_channels</code>          | Specifies the channels that are available in the 6 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.   |
| <code>dcs dcs-2g-method {auto manual}</code>              | Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 2.4 GHz band.   |
| <code>dcs dcs-5g-method {auto manual}</code>              | Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 5 GHz band.   |
| <code>dcs dcs-6g-method {auto manual}</code>              | Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 6 GHz band.   |
| <code>dcs dfs-aware {enable disable}</code>               | <p>Enable this to force the Zyxel Device to only use the non-DFS channels.</p> <p>Disable this to allow the Zyxel Device to use the DFS channels for more channel options.</p> <p>Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is a WiFi channel allocation scheme that allows APs to use channels in the 5 GHz band normally reserved for radar. Before using a DFS channel, an AP must ensure there is no radar present by performing a Channel Availability Check (CAC). This check takes 1-10 minutes, depending on the country in which the AP is located.</p> <p>The Zyxel Device only switches to a DFS channel when a nearby AP is broadcasting the same SSID the Zyxel Device uses. This allows WiFi clients to switch to connect to the same SSID on another AP when the Zyxel Device is under the CAC process before switching to a DFS channel.</p> <p>The nearby AP's SSID signal strength must be greater than the specified RSSI threshold. The nearby AP's SSID channel utilization percentage must be under the specified threshold. You can specify the threshold using the <code>dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-rssi &lt;-20...-105&gt;</code> and <code>dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-ch-util &lt;0-100&gt;</code> commands.</p> |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>dfs-aware-neighbor-rssi &lt;-20...-105&gt;</code>                   | Sets the minimum RSSI threshold (dBm) requirement of the nearby AP's SSID signal strength.  |
| <code>dfs-aware-neighbor-ch-util &lt;0-100&gt;</code>                     | Sets the maximum threshold (percentage) of the nearby AP's SSID channel utilization.  |
| <code>dfs mode {interval schedule}</code>                                 | Sets the Zyxel Device to use DCS at the end of the specified time interval or at a specific time on selected days of the week.  |
| <code>dfs schedule &lt;hh:mm&gt;<br/>{mon tue wed thu fri sat sun}</code> | Sets what time of day (in 24-hour format) the Zyxel Device starts to use DCS on the specified day(s) of the week.   |
| <code>description description</code>                                      | Sets the description for the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <code>_</code> ), or dashes ( <code>-</code> ). This value is case-sensitive.   |
| <code>[no] disable-dfs-switch</code>                                      | Makes the DFS switch active or inactive. By default this is inactive.   |
| <code>[no] dot11n-disable-coexistence</code>                              | Fixes the channel bandwidth as 40 MHz. The <code>no</code> command has the Zyxel Device automatically choose 40 MHz if all the clients support it or 20 MHz if some clients only support 20 MHz.  |
| <code>dtim-period &lt;1..255&gt;</code>                                   | Sets the DTIM period for this profile.<br><br>Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) is the time period after which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted to mobile clients in the Active Power Management mode. A high DTIM value can cause clients to lose connectivity with the network. This value can be set from 1 to 255.<br><br>The default is 1.   |
| <code>[no] frag &lt;256..2346&gt;</code>                                  | Sets or removes the fragmentation value for this profile.<br><br>The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent.<br><br>The default is 2346.   |
| <code>guard-interval wlan_htgi</code>                                     | Sets the guard interval for this profile.<br><br>The default for this is <i>short</i> .   |
| <code>[no] htprotect</code>   | Activates HT protection for this profile. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable it.<br><br>By default, this is disabled.   |
| <code>[no] ignore-country-ie</code>                                       | Prevents the AP from broadcasting a country code, also called a country Information Element (IE), in beacon frames. This makes the AP incompatible with 802.11d networks and devices. The <code>no</code> command allows the AP to broadcast the country code.<br><br>802.11d is a WiFi network specification that allows an AP to broadcast a country code to WiFi clients. The country code tells clients where the AP is located.<br><br>Note: Run this command if WiFi clients are unable to connect to the AP because of an incompatible country code. |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND                                      | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>limit-ampdu &lt; 100..65535&gt;</code> | Sets the maximum frame size to be aggregated.<br>By default this is 50000.   |
| <code>limit-amsdu &lt;2290..4096&gt;</code>  | Sets the maximum frame size to be aggregated.<br>The default is 4096.  |
| <code>[no] nol-channel-block</code>          | Enables or disables DFS channel blocking when the Zyxel Device detects radar signals within the range of that DFS channel.   |
| <code>[no] multicast-to-unicast</code>       | <p>"Multicast to unicast" broadcasts wireless multicast traffic to all WiFi clients as unicast traffic to provide more reliable transmission. The data rate changes dynamically based on the application's bandwidth requirements. Although unicast provides more reliable transmission of the multicast traffic, it also produces duplicate packets.</p> <p>The <code>no</code> command turns multicast to unicast off to send wireless multicast traffic at the rate you specify with the <code>2g-multicast-speed</code>, <code>5g-multicast-speed</code> or <code>6g-multicast-speed</code> command.</p>   |
| <code>[no] reject-legacy-station</code>      | <p>Allows only 802.11 n/ac/ax clients to connect, and reject 802.11a/b/g clients.</p> <p>Use the <code>no</code> command to also allow 802.11a/b/g clients.</p>  |
| <code>role {ap}</code>                       | <p>Sets the profile's wireless LAN radio operating mode.</p> <p>Use <code>ap</code> to have the radio function as an access point with one or more BSSIDs.</p>   |
| <code>[no] rssi-thres</code>                 | Sets whether or not to use the Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) threshold to ensure WiFi clients receive good throughput. This allows only WiFi clients with a strong signal to connect to the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>rssi-dbm &lt;-20..-105&gt;</code>      | <p>When using the RSSI threshold, set a minimum client signal strength for connecting to the AP.</p> <p>-20 dBm is the strongest signal you can require and -105 is the weakest.</p>   |
| <code>rssi-kickout &lt;-20..-105&gt;</code>  | <p>Set a minimum kick-off signal strength. You can set from -20dBm (the strongest signal) to -105dBm (the weakest signal).</p> <p>When a WiFi client's signal strength is lower than the specified threshold, the Zyxel Device checks the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client. The Zyxel Device will only disconnect the WiFi client when</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the WiFi client signal strength falls below the kick-off strength and</li> <li>the WiFi client's traffic throughput is below a minimum threshold.</li> </ul> <p>Use the <code>rssi-idlechecklvl {high standard low}</code> command to set the idle check level.</p> <p>Use the <code>rssi-idlecheckpktnum/rssi-idlecheckinterval</code> commands to specify the minimum traffic threshold and idle check period.</p> |

Table 29 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>rssi-idlechecklvl {high standard low}</code> | <p>Set the minimum traffic throughput threshold here.</p> <p><b>high:</b> Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is heavy. The Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is medium or low.</p> <p><b>standard:</b> Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is medium. The Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is low.</p> <p><b>low:</b> Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is low. At the time of writing, the Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if there's no packet sent between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client in one second.</p> |
| <code>rssi-interval &lt;1..86400&gt;</code>        | Sets the interval the Zyxel Device checks a WiFi client's signal strength.  |
| <code>rssi-idlecheckpktnum &lt;0..65535&gt;</code> | <p>Sets the traffic threshold the Zyxel Device uses to determine when to disassociate a WiFi client with poor signal strength.</p> <p>The Zyxel Device will disassociate a WiFi client when the WiFi client's traffic (number of packets) during the check period is below the threshold.</p>   |
| <code>rssi-idlecheckinterval &lt;0..60&gt;</code>  | Sets the check period during which the Zyxel Device counts a WiFi client's traffic throughput and decides whether to disassociate the WiFi client.  |
| <code>[no] rssi-retry</code>                       | <p>Allows a WiFi client to try to associate with the Zyxel Device again after it is disconnected due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disallow it.</p>  |
| <code>rssi-retrycount &lt;1~100&gt;</code>         | Sets the maximum number of times a WiFi client can attempt to re-connect to the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>tx-mask chain_mask</code>                    | Sets the outgoing chain mask.   |
| <code>rx-mask chain_mask</code>                    | Sets the incoming chain mask.   |
| <code>subframe-ampdu &lt;2..64&gt;</code>          | <p>Sets the maximum number of frames to be aggregated each time.</p> <p>By default this is 32.</p>  |
| <code>exit</code>                                  | Exits configuration mode for this profile.  |

## 11.2.1 AP radio Profile Commands Example

The following example shows you how to set up the radio profile named 'RADIO01', activate it, and configure it to use the following settings:

- 2.4G band and 802.11ac wireless mode with channel 6
- channel width of 20MHz
- a DTIM period of 2
- a beacon interval of 100ms
- AMPDU frame aggregation enabled
- an AMPDU buffer limit of 65535 bytes
- an AMPDU subframe limit of 64 frames
- AMSDU frame aggregation enabled
- an AMSDU buffer limit of 4096
- block acknowledgement enabled
- a short guard interval

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# activate
Router(config-profile-radio)# band 2.4G band_mode ac
Router(config-profile-radio)# 2g-channel 6
Router(config-profile-radio)# ch-width 20m
Router(config-profile-radio)# dtim-period 2
Router(config-profile-radio)# beacon-interval 100
Router(config-profile-radio)# ampdu
Router(config-profile-radio)# limit-ampdu 65535
Router(config-profile-radio)# subframe-ampdu 64
Router(config-profile-radio)# amsdu
Router(config-profile-radio)# limit-amsdu 4096
Router(config-profile-radio)# block-ack
Router(config-profile-radio)# guard-interval short
Router(config-profile-radio)# tx-mask 5
Router(config-profile-radio)# rx-mask 7
```

## Station Disassociation-Signal Threshold Example

This example shows you how to enable signal strength check and set up a minimum signal threshold for connection. WiFi clients with signal strength below the minimum threshold will be disassociated. This helps to avoid WiFi clients with poor signal strength taking up the AP resources. Configure a radio profile RADIO01 with the following settings:

- Enable RSSI checking on WiFi client connections.
- Set the minimum signal threshold to -105 dBm.
- Set the RSSI check interval to every 15 seconds.

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-thres
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-kickout -105
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-interval 15
Router(config-profile-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

Then, set the idle check level to “low”. The Zyxel Device will only disassociate WiFi clients with poor signals when they are not sending any traffic..

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-idlechecklvl low
Router(config-profile-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

## 11.3 SSID Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 30 Input Values for General SSID Profile Commands

| LABEL                     | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i>ssid_profile_name</i>  | The SSID profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.   |
| <i>ssid</i>               | The SSID broadcast name. You may use 1-32 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.   |
| <i>wlan_qos_category</i>  | Sets the type of QoS the SSID should use.<br><br><i>disable</i> : Turns off QoS for this SSID.<br><br><i>wmm</i> : Turns on QoS for this SSID. It automatically assigns Access Categories to packets as the device inspects them in transit.<br><br><i>wmm_be</i> : Assigns the “best effort” Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin.<br><br><i>wmm_bk</i> : Assigns the “background” Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin.<br><br><i>wmm_vi</i> : Assigns the “video” Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin.<br><br><i>wmm_vo</i> : Assigns the “voice” Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin. |
| <i>security_profile</i>   | Assigns an existing security profile to the SSID profile. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.  |
| <i>mac_filter_profile</i> | Assigns an existing MAC filter profile to the SSID profile. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.  |
| <i>description</i>        | Sets the description of the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.   |

The following table describes the commands available for SSID profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 31 Command Summary: SSID Profile

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show wlan-ssid-profile {all   rule_count   ssid_profile_name}</code>  | Displays the SSID profile(s).<br><br>all: Displays all profiles.<br><br>rule_count: Displays how many SSID profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>ssid_profile_name: Displays the specified profile.  |
| <code>wlan-ssid-profile rename ssid_profile_name1 ssid_profile_name2</code> | Gives an existing SSID profile ( <i>ssid_profile_name1</i> ) a new name ( <i>ssid_profile_name2</i> ).  |
| <code>[no] wlan-ssid-profile ssid_profile_name</code>                       | Enters configuration mode for the specified SSID profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove the specified profile.  |
| <code>band {2.4G 5G 6G}</code>  | Sets the frequency bands to which this profile is applicable.<br><br>You can use the <i>ssid profile index ssid_profile_name</i> command to assign the SSID profile to different radio slots. The SSID profile will only take effect on radio slots which are using the frequency bands the profile is applicable to. |
| <code>[no] block-intra</code>   | Enables intra-BSSID traffic blocking. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable it in this profile.<br><br>By default this is disabled.  |
| <code>description description</code>  | Sets a descriptive name for this profile.   |
| <code>[no] dot11k-v activate</code>   | Enable IEEE 802.11k/v assisted roaming on the Zyxel Device. When the connected clients request 802.11k neighbor lists, the Zyxel Device will response with a list of neighbor APs that can be candidates for roaming.<br><br>Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable it in this profile.                               |
| <code>{downlink-rate-limit   uplink-rate-limit} data_rate</code>            | Sets the maximum incoming/outgoing transmission data rate (either in mbps or kbps) on a per-station basis.<br><br>downlink-rate-limit: sets the<br><br>uplink-rate-limit:<br><br>data_rate: the range is from 0-160 in mbps, or 161-160000 in kbps.   |
| <code>exit</code>   | Exits configuration mode for this profile.  |
| <code>[no] hide</code>  | Prevents the SSID from being publicly broadcast. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to re-enable public broadcast of the SSID in this profile.<br><br>By default this is disabled.   |
| <code>[no] l2isolation l2_isolation_profile</code>                          | Assigns the specified layer-2 isolation profile to this SSID profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove it.<br><br>By default, no layer-2 isolation profile is assigned.  |

Table 31 Command Summary: SSID Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] <i>macfilter mac_filter_profile</i>                       | Assigns the specified MAC filtering profile to this SSID profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove it.<br><br>By default, no MAC filter is assigned.   |
| [no] <i>proxy-arp</i>  | Sets the Zyxel Device to answer ARP requests for an IP address on behalf of a client associated with this SSID. This can reduce broadcast traffic and improve network performance.<br><br>Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable Proxy ARP.   |
| <i>qos wlan_qos_category</i>                                   | Sets the QoS access category tag associated with this SSID.   |
| <i>security security_profile</i>                               | Assigns the specified security profile to this SSID profile.  |
| <i>ssid</i>  | Sets the SSID. This is the name visible on the network to WiFi clients. Enter up to 32 characters, spaces and underscores are allowed.  |
| [no] <i>ssid-schedule</i>                                      | Enables the SSID schedule. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable the SSID schedule.  |
| {mon tue wed thu fri sat sun} {enable disable} <hh:mm> <hh:mm> | Sets whether the SSID is enabled or disabled on each day of the week. This also specifies the hour and minute (in 24-hour format) to set the time period of each day during which the SSID is enabled/disabled.<br><br><hh:mm> <hh:mm>: If you set both start time and end time to 00:00, it indicates a whole day event.<br><br>Note: The end time must be larger than the start time. |
| [no] <i>uapsd</i>  | Enables Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (U-APSD), which is also known as WMM-Power Save. This helps WiFi clients increase battery life for battery-powered WiFi clients connected to the Zyxel Device using this SSID profile.<br><br>Use the <i>no</i> parameter to disable the U-APSD feature.  |
| [no] <i>vlan-id &lt;1..4094&gt;</i>                            | Applies to each SSID profile. If the VLAN ID is equal to the AP's native VLAN ID then traffic originating from the SSID is not tagged.<br><br>The default VLAN ID is 1.   |

### 11.3.1 SSID Profile Example 1

The following example creates an SSID profile with the name 'Zyxel'. It makes the assumption that both the security profile (SECURITY01) and the MAC filter profile (MACFILTER01) already exist.

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile SSID01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# ssid Zyxel
Router(config-ssid-radio)# qos wmm
Router(config-ssid-radio)# security SECURITY01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# macfilter MACFILTER01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

## 11.3.2 SSID Profile Example 2

Follow the steps below to have the 2.4G WiFi clients and 5G WiFi clients to use the same SSID profile when connected to different radios.

- 1 Create an SSID profile **SSID01**, set the SSID. Set the band to 2.4G and 5G.

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile SSID01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# ssid Zyxel
Router(config-ssid-radio)# band 2.4G 5G
Router(config-ssid-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

- 2 Apply **SSID01** to radio **slot1** and radio **slot2**.

```
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 SSID01
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)# wlan slot2
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 SSID01
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)#
```

- 3 Use the show command to check the current configurations on both radios. The 2.4G WiFi clients and 5G WiFi clients can now connect to radio **slot1** and **slot2** using the same SSID to access the Internet.

```
Router# show wlan slot1
slot: slot1
card: none
Role: ap
Profile: default1
SSID_profile_1: SSID01
...
SSID_profile_8:
SLOT_1_Output_power: 30dBm
Activate: yes
WDS_Role: none
WDS_Profile: default
WDS_uplink: auto
WDS_Downlink: unlimited
Band: 2.4G
SSID_profile_1_band: 2.4G/5G
...
SSID_profile_8_band:
Router#
```

## 11.4 Security Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 32 Input Values for General Security Profile Commands

| LABEL                        | DESCRIPTION  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <i>security_profile_name</i> | The security profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <code>_</code> ), or dashes ( <code>-</code> ), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <i>wep_key</i>               | Sets the WEP key encryption strength. Select either <i>64bit</i> or <i>128bit</i> .  |
| <i>wpa_key</i>               | Sets the WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key in ASCII. You may use 8-63 alphanumeric characters. This value is case-sensitive.   |
| <i>wpa_key_64</i>            | Sets the WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key in HEX. You must use 64 alphanumeric characters.  |
| <i>secret</i>                | Sets the shared secret used by your network's RADIUS server.   |
| <i>auth-method</i>           | The authentication method used by the security profile.  |

The following table describes the commands available for security profile management. You must use the `configure` terminal command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 33 Command Summary: Security Profile

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show wlan-security-profile {all   rule_count   security_profile_name}</code>      | Displays the security profile(s).<br><br>all: Displays all profiles.<br><br>rule_count: Displays how many security profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>security_profile_name: Displays the specified profile.  |
| <code>wlan-security-profile rename security_profile_name1 security_profile_name2</code> | Gives existing security profile ( <i>security_profile_name1</i> ) a new name, ( <i>security_profile_name2</i> ).  |
| <code>[no] wlan-security-profile security_profile_name</code>                           | Enters configuration mode for the specified security profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove the specified profile.  |
| <code>[no] server-acct &lt;1..2&gt; activate</code>                                     | Activates the primary/secondary external accounting server. The Zyxel Device will use the secondary accounting server when the primary accounting server is down.<br><br>Use <i>no</i> to disable the specified server.<br><br>1: primary accounting server.<br><br>2: secondary accounting server. |

Table 33 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>server-acct &lt;1..2&gt; {host address<br/>host_name   ip address ipv4_address}<br/>port &lt;1..65535&gt; secret secret</code> | <p>Sets the primary/secondary external accounting server IPv4 address, port and shared-key.</p> <p>1: primary accounting server.</p> <p>2: secondary accounting server.</p> <p><i>secret</i>: the key shared between the external accounting server and the Zyxel Device. You can use up to 64 alphanumeric and special characters including the following: <code>`~!@#\$%^&amp;*()_+={} \;':&lt;,&gt;./</code>.</p>  |
| <code>[no] accounting interim-interval<br/>&lt;1..1440&gt;</code>  | Sets the time interval for how often the Zyxel Device is to send an interim update message with current client statistics to the accounting server. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to clear the interval setting.  |
| <code>[no] accounting interim-update</code>  | Sets the Zyxel Device to send accounting update messages to the accounting server at the specified interval. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable it.   |
| <code>description description</code>   | Sets the description for the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <code>_</code> ), or dashes ( <code>-</code> ). This value is case-sensitive  |
| <code>[no] dot11r activate</code>  | Turns on IEEE 802.11r fast roaming on the Zyxel Device. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to turn it off.   |
| <code>[no] dot11r ft-over-ds activate</code>   | <p>Sets the clients to communicate with the target AP through the current AP (the Zyxel Device). The communication between the client and the target AP is carried in frames between the client and the current AP, and is then sent to the target AP through the wired Ethernet connection.</p> <p>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to have the clients communicate directly with the target AP.</p>  |
| <code>[no] dot11w</code>   | <p>Data frames in 802.11 WLANs can be encrypted and authenticated with WEP, WPA, WPA2 or WPA3. But 802.11 management frames, such as beacon/probe response, association request, association response, de-authentication and disassociation are always unauthenticated and unencrypted. IEEE 802.11w Protected Management Frames allows APs to use the existing security mechanisms (encryption and authentication methods defined in IEEE 802.11i WPA/ WPA2) to protect management frames. This helps prevent wireless DoS attacks.</p> <p>Enables management frame protection (MFP) to add security to 802.11 management frames. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable it.</p> |
| <code>dot11w-op &lt;1..2&gt;</code>  | <p>Sets whether WiFi clients have to support management frame protection in order to access the wireless network.</p> <p>1: if you do not require the WiFi clients to support MFP. Management frames will be encrypted if the clients support MFP.</p> <p>2: WiFi clients must support MFP in order to join the Zyxel Device's wireless network.</p>  |
| <code>[no] dot1x-eap</code>  | Enables 802.1x secure authentication. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable it.  |

Table 33 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>eap {external   internal auth_method}</code>                       | Sets the 802.1x authentication method.   |
| <code>group-key &lt;30..30000&gt;</code>                                 | Sets the interval (in seconds) at which the AP updates the group WPA/WPA2 encryption key.<br><br>The default is 1800.  |
| <code>idle &lt;30..30000&gt;</code>                                      | Sets the idle interval (in seconds) that a client can be idle before authentication is discontinued.<br><br>The default is 3000.   |
| <code>[no] mac-auth activate</code>                                      | MAC authentication has the AP use an external server to authenticate WiFi clients by their MAC addresses. Users cannot get an IP address if the MAC authentication fails. The <code>no</code> parameter turns it off.<br><br>RADIUS servers can require the MAC address in the WiFi client's account (username/password) or Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute. |
| <code>mac-auth auth-method auth_method</code>                            | Sets the authentication method for MAC authentication.   |
| <code>mac-auth case account {upper / lower}</code>                       | Sets the case (upper or lower) the external server requires for using MAC addresses as the account username and password.<br><br>For example, use <code>mac-auth case account upper</code> and <code>mac-auth delimiter account dash</code> if you need to use a MAC address formatted like 00-11-AC-01-A0-11 as the username and password.                      |
| <code>mac-auth case calling-station-id {upper / lower}</code>            | Sets the case (upper or lower) the external server requires for letters in MAC addresses in the Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute.   |
| <code>mac-auth delimiter account {colon / dash / none}</code>            | Specify the separator the external server uses for the two-character pairs within MAC addresses used as the account username and password.<br><br>For example, use <code>mac-auth case account upper</code> and <code>mac-auth delimiter account dash</code> if you need to use a MAC address formatted like 00-11-AC-01-A0-11 as the username and password.     |
| <code>mac-auth delimiter calling-station-id {colon / dash / none}</code> | Select the separator the external server uses for the pairs in MAC addresses in the Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute.   |
| <code>mode {none   enhanced-open   wep   wpa2   wpa2-mix   wpa3}</code>  | Sets the security mode for this profile.   |
| <code>[no] server-auth &lt;1..2&gt; activate</code>                      | Activates the primary/secondary external RADIUS server for authentication. The Zyxel Device will use the secondary RADIUS server when the primary RADIUS server is down.<br><br>Use <code>no</code> to disable the specified external RADIUS server.   |
| <code>[no] radius-attr nas-id string</code>                              | Sets the NAS (Network Access Server) identifier attribute if the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide it. The NAS identifier is to identify the source of access request. It could be the NAS's fully qualified domain name.<br><br>Use <code>no</code> to remove the NAS identifier you set.  |

Table 33 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] radius-attr nas-ip <i>ipv4_address</i>  | Sets the NAS (Network Access Server) IPv4 address attribute if the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide it.<br><br>Use <i>no</i> to remove the NAS IPv4 address you set.  |
| [no] reauth <30..30000>  | Sets the interval (in seconds) between authentication requests.<br><br>The default is 0.  |
| server-auth <1..2> {host address<br>host_name   ip address <i>ipv4_address</i> }<br>port <1..65535> secret <i>secret</i> | Sets the primary/secondary external RADIUS server IPv4 address, port number and shared key.<br><br>1: primary RADIUS server<br>2: secondary RADIUS server<br><br><i>secret</i> : the key shared between the external RADIUS server and the Zyxel Device. You can use up to 64 alphanumeric and special characters including the following: `~!@#\$%^&*()_+={} \`';<,>./.  |
| no server-auth <1..2>  | Clears the authentication setting of the primary/secondary RADIUS server.<br><br>1: primary RADIUS server<br>2: secondary RADIUS server   |
| [no] transition-mode   | Enables backward compatibility when used with WPA3 or Enhanced Open security mode. WPA3 falls back to WPA2, while Enhanced Open falls back to open (none).<br><br>Use the <i>no</i> command to disable this feature.  |
| wep-auth-type {open   share}   | Sets the authentication key type to either <i>open</i> or <i>share</i> .  |
| wep <64   128> default-key <1..4>  | Sets the WEP encryption strength (64 or 128) and the default key index (1 ~ 4).   |
| wep-key <1..4> <i>wep_key</i>  | If you select WEP-64 enter 10 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x11AA22BB33) for each Key used; or enter 5 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey) for each Key used.<br><br>If you select WEP-128 enter 26 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x00112233445566778899AABBCC) for each Key used; or enter 13 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey12345678) for each Key used.<br><br>You can save up to four different keys. Enter the <i>default-key</i> (1 ~ 4) to save your WEP to one of those four available slots. |
| wpa-encrypt {aes   auto}   | Sets the WPA/WPA2 encryption cipher type.<br><br><i>auto</i> : This automatically chooses the best available cipher based on the cipher in use by the WiFi client that is attempting to make a connection.<br><br><i>aes</i> : This is the Advanced Encryption Standard encryption method, a newer more robust algorithm than TKIP. Not all WiFi clients may support this.  |

Table 33 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

| COMMAND                                     | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>wpa-psk {wpa_key / wpa_key_64}</code> | Sets the WPA/WPA2/WPA3 pre-shared key.  |
| <code>[no] wpa2-preauth</code>              | Enables pre-authentication to allow WiFi clients to switch APs without having to re-authenticate their network connection. The RADIUS server puts a temporary PMK Security Authorization cache on the WiFi clients. It contains their session ID and a pre-authorized list of viable APs.<br><br>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable this. |
| <code>exit</code>                           | Exits configuration mode for this profile.  |

### 11.4.1 Security Profile Example

The following example creates a security profile with the name 'SECURITY01'.

```
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile SECURITY01
Router(config-security-profile)# mode wpa2
Router(config-security-profile)# wpa-encrypt aes
Router(config-security-profile)# wpa-psk 12345678
Router(config-security-profile)# idle 3600
Router(config-security-profile)# reauth 1800
Router(config-security-profile)# group-key 1800
Router(config-security-profile)# exit
Router(config)#
```

## 11.5 MAC Filter Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 34 Input Values for General MAC Filter Profile Commands

| LABEL                         | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>macfilter_profile_name</i> | The MAC filter profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <i>description</i>            | Sets the description of the MAC address. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.                             |

The following table describes the commands available for MAC filter profile management. You must use the configure terminal command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 35 Command Summary: MAC Filter Profile

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>show wlan-macfilter-profile {all   rule_count   [macfilter_profile_name]}</code>     | Displays the MAC filter profile(s).<br><br>all: Displays all profiles.<br><br>rule_count: Displays how many MAC filter profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>macfilter_profile_name: Displays the specified profile.          |
| <code>wlan-macfilter-profile rename macfilter_profile_name1 macfilter_profile_name2</code> | Gives an existing MAC filter profile (macfilter_profile_name1) a new name (macfilter_profile_name2).   |
| <code>[no] wlan-macfilter-profile macfilter_profile_name</code>                            | Enters configuration mode for the specified MAC filter profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove the specified profile.   |
| <code>filter-action {allow   deny}</code>  | Permits the WiFi client with the MAC addresses in this profile to connect to the network through the associated SSID; select deny to block the WiFi clients with the specified MAC addresses.<br><br>The default is set to <i>deny</i> . |
| <code>[no] mac_addr [description description]</code>                                       | Specifies a MAC address associated with this profile. You can also set a description for the MAC address. Enter up to 60 characters. Spaces and underscores allowed.   |
| <code>exit</code>  | Exits configuration mode for this profile.   |

### 11.5.1 MAC Filter Profile Example

The following example creates a MAC filter profile with the name 'MACFILTER01'.

```
Router(config)# wlan-macfilter-profile MACFILTER01
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# filter-action deny
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:06 description MAC01
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:07 description MAC02
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:08 description MAC03
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# exit
Router(config)#
```

## 11.6 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 36 Input Values for General Layer-2 Isolation Profile Commands

| LABEL                           | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <i>l2isolation_profile_name</i> | The layer-2 isolation profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <i>mac_address</i>              | The MAC address of the device that is allowed to communicate with the Zyxel Device's WiFi clients. Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.         |
| <i>description</i>              | Sets the description name of MAC address in the profile. You may use 1-60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-).  |

The following table describes the commands available for Layer-2 Isolation profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 37 Command Summary: Layer-2 Isolation Profile

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show wlan-l2isolation-profile {all   rule_count   [l2isolation_profile_name]}</code>       | Displays the layer-2 isolation profile(s) settings.<br><br>all: Displays settings of all layer-2 isolation profiles configured on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>rule_count: Displays how many layer-2 isolation profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>l2isolation_profile_name: Displays settings of the specified profile. |
| <code>wlan-l2isolation-profile rename l2isolation_profile_name1 l2isolation_profile_name2</code> | Gives the existing layer-2 isolation profile ( <i>l2isolation_profile_name1</i> ) a new name, ( <i>l2isolation_profile_name2</i> ).   |
| <code>[no] wlan-l2isolation-profile l2isolation_profile_name</code>                              | Enters configuration mode for the specified layer-2 isolation profile. Use the <i>no</i> parameter to remove the specified profile.   |
| <code>[no] mac_address</code>  | Sets the MAC address of the device that is allowed to communicate with the Zyxel Device's WiFi clients in this profile.   |
| <code>description description</code>   | Sets the description name for the MAC address associated with this profile.   |
| <code>exit</code>  | Exits configuration mode for this profile.  |

### 11.6.1 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Example

The following example creates a layer-2 isolation profile with the name 'test1'.

```
Router(config)# wlan-l2isolation-profile test1
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# 00:a0:c5:01:23:45
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# description user1
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# exit
Router(config)#
```

## 11.7 WDS Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 38 Input Values for General WDS Profile Commands

| LABEL                   | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>wds_profile_name</i> | The WDS profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores ( <u>_</u> ), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |

The following table describes the commands available for WDS profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 39 Command Summary: WDS Profile

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show wlan-wds-profile {all   rule_count   [wds_profile_name]}</code> | Displays the WDS profile(s) settings.<br><br>all: Displays settings of all WDS profiles configured on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>rule_count: Displays how many WDS profiles are created on the Zyxel Device.<br><br>wds_profile_name: Displays settings of the specified profile. |
| <code>wlan-wds-profile rename wds_profile_name1 wds_profile_name2</code>   | Gives the existing WDS profile ( <i>wds_profile_name1</i> ) a new name, ( <i>wds_profile_name2</i> ).   |
| <code>[no] wlan-wds-profile wds_profile_name</code>                        | Enters configuration mode for the specified WDS profile.  |
| <code>psk psk</code>   | Sets a pre-shared key of between 8 and 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols) or 64 hexadecimal characters. The key is used to encrypt the traffic between the APs.  |
| <code>ssid ssid</code>   | Sets the SSID with which you want the Zyxel Device to connect to a root AP or repeater to form a WDS.   |
| <code>exit</code>  | Exits configuration mode for this profile.  |

### 11.7.1 WDS Profile Example

The following example creates a WDS profile with the name 'WDS1', and shows the profile settings.

```
Router(config)# wlan-wds-profile WDS1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# ssid Zyxel-WDS
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# psk qwer1234
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# exit
Router(config)# show wlan-wds-profile WDS1
wds profile: WDS1
  reference: 0
  Id: 2
  Description:
    WDS_SSID: Zyxel-WDS
    WDS_PSK: qwer1234
Router(config)#
```

# CHAPTER 12

## Rogue AP

This chapter shows you how to set up Rogue Access Point (AP) detection and containment.

### 12.1 Rogue AP Detection Overview

Rogue APs are wireless access points operating in a network's coverage area that are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can potentially open holes in the network security. Attackers can take advantage of a rogue AP's weaker (or non-existent) security to gain illicit access to the network, or set up their own rogue APs in order to capture information from WiFi clients.

Conversely, a friendly AP is one that the Zyxel Device network administrator regards as non-threatening. This does not necessarily mean the friendly AP must belong to the network managed by the Zyxel Device; rather, it is any unmanaged AP within range of the Zyxel Device's own wireless network that is allowed to operate without being contained. This can include APs from neighboring companies, for example, or even APs maintained by your company's employees that operate outside of the established network.

### 12.2 Rogue AP Detection Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 40 Input Values for Rogue AP Detection Commands

| LABEL               | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>ap_mac</i>       | Specifies the MAC address (in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX or XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX format) of the AP to be added to either the rogue AP or friendly AP list. The <code>no</code> command removes the entry. |
| <i>description2</i> | Sets the description of the AP. You may use 1-60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.   |

The following table describes the commands available for rogue AP detection. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 41 Command Summary: Rogue AP Detection

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>rogue-ap detection</code>                                       | Enters sub-command mode for rogue AP detection.  |
| <code>[no] activate</code>  | Activates rogue AP detection. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to deactivate rogue AP detection.  |
| <code>[no] ap-mode detection activate</code>                          | Sets the Zyxel Device to detect Rogue APs in the network.<br><br>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to disable rogue AP detection.  |
| <code>detect interval &lt;10..1440&gt;</code>                         | Sets the time interval (in seconds) at which the Zyxel Device scans for rogues APs.  |
| <code>friendly-ap ap_mac description2</code>                          | Sets the device that owns the specified MAC address as a friendly AP. You can also assign a description to this entry on the friendly AP list.                                   |
| <code>no friendly-ap ap_mac</code>                                    | Removes the device that owns the specified MAC address from the friendly AP list.  |
| <code>rogue-ap ap_mac description2</code>                             | Sets the device that owns the specified MAC address as a rogue AP. You can also assign a description to this entry on the rogue AP list.   |
| <code>no rogue-ap ap_mac</code>                                       | Removes the device that owns the specified MAC address from the rogue AP list.   |
| <code>[no] rogue-rule {hidden-ssid ssid-keyword weak-security}</code> | Specifies the characteristic(s) an AP should have for the Zyxel Device to classify it as a Rogue AP.<br><br>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to remove the classification rule. |
| <code>[no] rogue-rule keyword &lt;ssid&gt;</code>                     | Adds an SSID Keyword.<br><br>Use the <code>no</code> parameter to remove the SSID keyword.   |
| <code>exit</code>   | Exits configuration mode for rogue AP detection.   |
| <code>show rogue-ap detection keyword list</code>                     | Displays the SSID keyword(s) an AP should have for the Zyxel Device to rule it as a Rogue AP.  |
| <code>show rogue-ap detection monitoring</code>                       | Displays a table of detected APs and information about them, such as their MAC addresses, when they were last seen, and their SSIDs, to name a few.                              |
| <code>show rogue-ap detection list {rogue/friendly/all}</code>        | Displays the specified rogue/friendly/all AP list.   |
| <code>show rogue-ap detection status</code>                           | Displays whether rogue AP detection is on or off.  |
| <code>show rogue-ap detection info</code>                             | Displays a summary of the number of detected devices from the following categories: rogue, friendly, ad-hoc, unclassified, and total.  |

## 12.2.1 Rogue AP Detection Examples

This example sets the device associated with MAC address 00:13:49:11:11:11 as a rogue AP, and the device associated with MAC address 00:13:49:11:11:22 as a friendly AP. It then removes MAC address from the rogue AP list with the assumption that it was misidentified.

```
Router(config)# rogue-ap detection
Router(config-detection)# rogue-ap 00:13:49:11:11:11 rogue
Router(config-detection)# friendly-ap 00:13:49:11:11:22 friendly
Router(config-detection)# no rogue-ap 00:13:49:11:11:11
Router(config-detection)# exit
```

This example displays the rogue AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list rogue
no.   mac                description
contain
=====
1     00:13:49:18:15:5A
0
```

This example shows the friendly AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list friendly
no.   mac                description
=====
1     11:11:11:11:11:11    third floor
2     00:13:49:11:22:33
3     00:13:49:00:00:05
4     00:13:49:00:00:01
5     00:0D:0B:CB:39:33    dept1
```

This example shows the combined rogue and friendly AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list all
no.   role              mac                description
=====
1     friendly-ap        11:11:11:11:11:11    third floor
2     friendly-ap        00:13:49:11:22:33
3     friendly-ap        00:13:49:00:00:05
4     friendly-ap        00:13:49:00:00:01
5     friendly-ap        00:0D:0B:CB:39:33    dept1
6     rogue-ap           00:13:49:18:15:5A
```

This example shows both the status of rogue AP detection and the summary of detected APs.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection status
rogue-ap detection status: on

Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection info
rogue ap: 1
friendly ap: 4
adhoc: 4
unclassified ap: 0
total devices: 0
```

# CHAPTER 13

## Wireless Frame Capture

This chapter shows you how to configure and use wireless frame capture on the Zyxel Device.

### 13.1 Wireless Frame Capture Overview

Troubleshooting wireless LAN issues has always been a challenge. Wireless sniffer tools like Ethereal can help capture and decode packets of information, which can then be analyzed for debugging. It works well for local data traffic, but if your devices are spaced increasingly farther away then it often becomes correspondingly difficult to attempt remote debugging. Complicated wireless packet collection is arguably an arduous and perplexing process. The wireless frame capture feature in the Zyxel Device can help.

This chapter describes the wireless frame capture commands, which allows a network administrator to capture wireless traffic information and download it to an Ethereal/Tcpdump compatible format packet file for analysis.

### 13.2 Wireless Frame Capture Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 42 Input Values for Wireless Frame Capture Commands

| LABEL                | DESCRIPTION   |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>ip_address</i>    | The IP address of the Access Point (AP) that you want to monitor. Enter a standard IPv4 IP address (for example, 192.168.1.2).  |
| <i>mon_file_size</i> | The size (in kbytes) of file to be captured.<br><br>It stops the capture and generates the capture file when either it reaches this size or the total combined size of all files in the directory reaches the maximum size which is 50 megabytes (51200 kbytes).          |
| <i>file_name</i>     | The file name prefix for each captured file. The default prefix is monitor while the default file name is monitor.dump.<br><br>You can use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores or dashes but the first character cannot be a number. This string is case sensitive. |

The following table describes the commands available for wireless frame capture. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 43 Command Summary: Wireless Frame Capture

| COMMAND                                  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>frame-capture configure</code>     | Enters sub-command mode for wireless frame capture.  |
| <code>src-ip add ip_address</code>       | Sets the IP address of an AP controlled by the Zyxel Device that you want to monitor. You can use this command multiple times to add additional IPs to the monitor list. |
| <code>file-prefix file_name</code>       | Sets the file name prefix for each captured file. Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters. Spaces and underscores are not allowed.  |
| <code>files-size mon_file_size</code>    | Sets the size (in kbytes) of files to be captured.   |
| <code>exit</code>                        | Exits configuration mode for wireless frame capture.   |
| <code>[no] frame-capture activate</code> | Starts wireless frame capture. Use the <code>no</code> parameter to turn it off.   |
| <code>show frame-capture status</code>   | Displays whether frame capture is running or not.  |
| <code>show frame-capture config</code>   | Displays the frame capture configuration.  |

## 13.2.1 Wireless Frame Capture Examples

This example configures the wireless frame capture parameters for an AP located at IP address 192.168.1.2.

```
Router(config)# frame-capture configure
Router(frame-capture)# src-ip add 192.168.1.2
Router(frame-capture)# file-prefix monitor
Router(frame-capture)# files-size 1000
Router(frame-capture)# exit
Router(config)#
```

This example shows frame capture status and configuration.

```
Router(config)# show frame-capture status
capture status: off

Router(config)# show frame-capture config
capture source: 192.168.1.2
file prefix: monitor
file size: 1000
```

# CHAPTER 14

## Dynamic Channel Selection

This chapter shows you how to configure and use dynamic channel selection on the Zyxel Device.

### 14.1 DCS Overview

Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS) is a feature that allows an AP to automatically select the radio channel upon which it broadcasts by passively listening to the area around it and determining what channels are currently being broadcast on by other devices.

When numerous APs broadcast within a given area, they introduce the possibility of heightened radio interference, especially if some or all of them are broadcasting on the same radio channel. This can make accessing the network potentially rather difficult for the stations connected to them. If the interference becomes too great, the network administrator must open his AP configuration options and manually change the channel to one that no other AP is using (or at least a channel that has a lower level of interference) in order to give the connected stations a minimum degree of channel interference.

### 14.2 DCS Commands

See [Section 11.2 on page 70](#) for detailed information about how to configure DCS settings in a radio profile.

The following table describes the commands available for dynamic channel selection. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 44 Command Summary: DCS

| COMMAND                       | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>dcs now</code>          | Has the Zyxel Device perform DCS on 2.4/5/6 GHz bands immediately.   |
| <code>dcs rand-backoff</code> | Has the Zyxel Device perform DCS on 2.4/5/6 GHz bands after a random period of waiting time to make sure no other nearby AP is performing DCS simultaneously. The Zyxel Device might wait from 0-10 minutes before performing DCS. |

# CHAPTER 15

## Wireless Load Balancing

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless load balancing.

### 15.1 Wireless Load Balancing Overview

Wireless load balancing is the process whereby you limit the number of connections allowed on an wireless access point (AP) or you limit the amount of wireless traffic transmitted and received on it. Because there is a hard upper limit on the AP's wireless bandwidth, this can be a crucial function in areas crowded with wireless users. Rather than let every user connect and subsequently dilute the available bandwidth to the point where each connecting device receives a meager trickle, the load balanced AP instead limits the incoming connections as a means to maintain bandwidth integrity.

### 15.2 Wireless Load Balancing Commands

The following table describes the commands available for wireless load balancing. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 45 Command Summary: Load Balancing

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] load-balancing kickout</code>                               | Enables an overloaded AP to disconnect ("kick") idle clients or clients with noticeably weak connections.   |
| <code>load-balancing mode {station   traffic   smart-classroom}</code> | Enables load balancing based on either number of stations (also known as WiFi clients) or wireless traffic on an AP.<br><br><i>station</i> or <i>traffic</i> : once the threshold is crossed (either the maximum station numbers or with network traffic), the Zyxel Device delays association request and authentication request packets from any new station that attempts to make a connection.<br><br><i>smart-classroom</i> : the Zyxel Device ignores association request and authentication request packets from any new station when the maximum number of stations is reached. |
| <code>load-balancing max sta &lt;1..127&gt;</code>                     | If load balancing by the number of stations/WiFi clients, this sets the maximum number of devices allowed to connect to a load-balanced AP.   |
| <code>load-balancing traffic level {high   low   medium}</code>        | If load balancing by traffic threshold, this sets the traffic threshold level.  |

Table 45 Command Summary: Load Balancing (continued)

| COMMAND                              | DESCRIPTION  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| load-balancing alpha <1..255>        | <p>Sets the load balancing alpha value.</p> <p>When the AP is balanced, then this setting delays a client's association with it by this number of seconds.</p> <p>Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.</p>   |
| load-balancing beta <1..255>         | <p>Sets the load balancing beta value.</p> <p>When the AP is overloaded, then this setting delays a client's association with it by this number of seconds.</p> <p>Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.</p>  |
| load-balancing sigma <51..100>       | <p>Sets the load balancing sigma value.</p> <p>This value is algorithm parameter used to calculate whether an AP is considered overloaded, balanced, or underloaded. It only applies to 'by traffic mode'.</p> <p>Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.</p> |
| load-balancing timeout <1..255>      | <p>Sets the length of time that an AP retains load balancing information it receives from other APs within its range.</p>  |
| load-balancing liInterval <1..255>   | <p>Sets the interval in seconds that each AP communicates with the other APs in its range for calculating the load balancing algorithm.</p> <p>Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.</p>  |
| load-balancing kickInterval <1..255> | <p>Enables the kickout feature for load balancing and also sets the kickout interval in seconds. While load balancing is enabled, the AP periodically disconnects stations at intervals equal to this setting.</p> <p>This occurs until the load balancing threshold is no longer exceeded.</p>  |
| show load-balancing config           | Displays the load balancing configuration.   |
| show load-balancing loading          | Displays the loading status per radio (underload / balance / overload) when you enable the load balancing function.  |
| [no] load-balancing activate         | Enables load balancing. Use the no parameter to disable it.  |

## 15.2.1 Wireless Load Balancing Examples

The following example shows you how to configure AP load balancing in "by station" mode. The maximum number of stations is set to 1.

```
Router(config)# load-balancing mode station
Router(config)# load-balancing max sta 1
Router(config)# show load-balancing config
load balancing config:
Activate: yes
Kickout: no
Mode: station
Max-sta: 1
Traffic-level: high
Alpha: 5
Beta: 10
Sigma: 60
Timeout: 20
LIInterval: 10
KickoutInterval: 20
```

The following example shows you how to configure AP load balancing in "by traffic" mode. The traffic level is set to low, and "disassociate station" is enabled.

```
Router(config)# load-balancing mode traffic
Router(config)# load-balancing traffic level low
Router(config)# load-balancing kickout
Router(config)# show load-balancing config
load balancing config:
Activate: yes
Kickout: yes
Mode: traffic
Max-sta: 1
Traffic-level: low
Alpha: 5
Beta: 10
Sigma: 60
Timeout: 20
LIInterval: 10
KickoutInterval: 20
```

# CHAPTER 16

## Bluetooth

This chapter shows you how to configure the iBeacon advertising settings for the Zyxel Device that supports Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE). Bluetooth Low Energy, which is also known as Bluetooth Smart, transmits less data over a shorter distance but consumes less power than classic Bluetooth. Check the feature comparison table in [Section 1.2 on page 12](#) to see which models support the BLE feature.

### 16.1 Bluetooth Overview

iBeacon is Apple's communication protocol on top of Bluetooth Low Energy wireless technology. Beacons (Bluetooth radio transmitters) or BLE enabled devices broadcast packets to every device around it to announce their presence. Advertising packets contain their iBeacon ID, which consists of the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID), major number, and minor number. These packets also contain a TX (transmit) power measured at a reference point, which is used to approximate a device's distance from the beacon. The UUID can be used to identify a service, a device, a manufacturer or an owner. The 2-byte major number is to identify and distinguish a group, and the 2-byte minor number is to identify and distinguish an individual.

For example, a company can set all its beacons to share the same UUID. The beacons in a particular branch uses the same major number, and each beacon in a branch can have its own minor number.

|       | COMPANY A                            |          |          |
|-------|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|
|       | BRANCH X                             |          | BRANCH Y |
|       | BEACON 1                             | BEACON 2 | BEACON 3 |
| UUID  | EBAECFAF-DFE0-4039-BE5A-F030EED4303C |          |          |
| Major | 10                                   | 10       | 20       |
| Minor | 1                                    | 2        | 1        |

Developers can create apps that respond to the iBeacon ID that your Zyxel Device broadcasts. An app that is associated with the Zyxel Device's iBeacon ID can measure the proximity of a customer to a beacon. This app can then push messages or trigger prompts and actions based on this information. This allows you to send highly contextual and highly localized advertisements to customers.

## 16.2 Bluetooth Commands

The following table describes the commands available for Bluetooth advertising settings. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 46 Bluetooth Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>ble slot_name</code>  | Enters the Bluetooth sub-command mode for the specified radio on the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>ibeacon index &lt;1..5&gt; no activate</code>   | Disables the specified iBeacon ID.   |
| <code>ibeacon index &lt;1..5&gt; activate</code>  | Enables the specified iBeacon ID.  |
| <code>ibeacon index &lt;1..5&gt; uuid uuid major &lt;0..65535&gt; minor &lt;0..65535&gt;</code> | <p>Adds a new iBeacon ID to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packets by specifying the UUID, major number and minor number.</p> <p>UUID: Enter 32 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9", split into five groups separated by hyphens (-). The UUID format is as follows: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx (8-4-4-4-12).</p> <p>Major/minor number: Enter an integer from 0 to 65535.</p> |
| <code>show ble advertising</code>   | Displays the Bluetooth advertising settings (beacon IDs) of the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>show ble uuid-gen</code>  | Displays the UUID that is automatically generated by the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>show ble status</code>  | Displays the Zyxel Device's Bluetooth status and detailed information.   |

### 16.2.1 Bluetooth Commands Example

The following example adds a beacon ID and displays the Bluetooth advertising settings.

```
Router(config)# show ble uuid-gen
UUID: 72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-AF1A586E92AD
Router(config)# ble slot1
Router(config-ble-slot)# ibeacon index 1 uuid 72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-
AF1A586E92AD major 1 minor 1
Router(config-ble-slot)# ibeacon index 1 activate
Router(config-ble-slot)# exit
Router(config)# show ble advertising
Slot  Index  Activate  UUID                                     Major  Minor
=====
1      1      1      72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-AF1A586E92AD    1      1
1      2      0
1      3      0
1      4      0
1      5      0
Router(config)#
```

# CHAPTER 17

## Certificates

This chapter explains how to use the certificates.

### 17.1 Certificates Overview

The Zyxel Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. You can use the Zyxel Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

### 17.2 Certificate Commands

This section describes the commands for configuring certificates.

### 17.3 Certificates Commands Input Values

The following table explains the values you can input with the `certificate` commands.

Table 47 Certificates Commands Input Values

| LABEL                      | DESCRIPTION  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>certificate_name</i>    | The name of a certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.- characters.   |
| <i>cn_address</i>          | A common name IP address identifies the certificate's owner. Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation.  |
| <i>cn_domain_name</i>      | A common name domain name identifies the certificate's owner. The domain name is for identification purposes only and can be any string. The domain name can be up to 255 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and periods.                                       |
| <i>cn_email</i>            | A common name e-mail address identifies the certificate's owner. The e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string. The e-mail address can be up to 63 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen, the @ symbol, periods and the underscore. |
| <i>organizational_unit</i> | Identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.  |

Table 47 Certificates Commands Input Values (continued)

| LABEL               | DESCRIPTION  |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>organization</i> | Identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.   |
| <i>country</i>      | Identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.   |
| <i>key_length</i>   | Enter a number to determine how many bits the key should use (512 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space.  |
| <i>password</i>     | When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, the certification authority may want you to include a key (password) to identify your certification request. Use up to 31 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9; `~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{}',./<>=-  |
| <i>ca_name</i>      | When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, you must have the certification authority's certificate already imported as a trusted certificate. Specify the name of the certification authority's certificate. It can be up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+[]{}',.- characters. |
| <i>url</i>          | When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server. You can use up to 511 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9'()+,./:~?;!*"#\$%_</td></tr>   |

## 17.4 Certificates Commands Summary

The following table lists the commands that you can use to display and manage the Zyxel Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests. You can also create certificates or certification requests. Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 48 ca Commands Summary

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>ca enroll cmp name <i>certificate_name</i> cn-type {ip cn <i>cn_address</i> fqdn cn <i>cn_domain_name</i> mail cn <i>cn_email</i>} [ou <i>organizational_unit</i>] [o <i>organization</i>] [c <i>country</i>] key-type {rsa dsa} key-len <i>key_length</i> num &lt;0..99999999&gt; password <i>password</i> ca <i>ca_name</i> url <i>url</i>;</code>                                 | Enrolls a certificate with a CA using Certificate Management Protocol (CMP). The certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key (password) to identify your certification request. |
| <code>ca enroll scep name <i>certificate_name</i> cn-type {ip cn <i>cn_address</i> fqdn cn <i>cn_domain_name</i> mail cn <i>cn_email</i>} [ou <i>organizational_unit</i>] [o <i>organization</i>] [c <i>country</i>] key-type {rsa dsa} key-len <i>key_length</i> password <i>password</i> ca <i>ca_name</i> url <i>url</i></code>   | Enrolls a certificate with a CA using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP). The certification authority may want you to include a key (password) to identify your certification request.              |
| <code>ca generate pkcs10 name <i>certificate_name</i> cn-type {ip cn <i>cn_address</i> fqdn cn <i>cn_domain_name</i> mail cn <i>cn_email</i>} [ou <i>organizational_unit</i>] [o <i>organization</i>] [c <i>country</i>] key-type {rsa rsa-sha256 rsa-sha512 dsa dsa-sha256} key-len <i>key_length</i> [extend-key {svr-client-ike  svr-client svr-ike svr client-ike client  ike}]</code> | Generates a PKCS#10 certification request.   |

Table 48 ca Commands Summary (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>ca generate pkcs12 name <i>name</i> password <i>password</i></code>  | Generates a PKCS#12 certificate.   |
| <code>ca generate x509 name <i>certificate_name</i> cn-type {ip cn <i>cn_address</i> fqdn cn <i>cn_domain_name</i> mail cn <i>cn_email</i>} [ou <i>organizational_unit</i>] [o <i>organization</i>] [c <i>country</i>] key-type {rsa rsa-sha256 rsa-sha512 dsa dsa-sha256} key-len <i>key_length</i> [extend-key {svr-client-ike  svr-client svr-ike svr client-ike client  ike}]</code> | Generates a self-signed x509 certificate.  |
| <code>ca rename category {local remote} <i>old_name</i> <i>new_name</i></code>   | Renames a local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.  |
| <code>ca validation <i>remote_certificate</i></code>   | Enters the sub command mode for validation of certificates signed by the specified remote (trusted) certificates.  |
| <code>no ca category {local remote} <i>certificate_name</i></code>   | Deletes the specified local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.  |
| <code>no ca validation <i>name</i></code>  | Removes the validation configuration for the specified remote (trusted) certificate.   |
| <code>show ca category {local remote} name <i>certificate_name</i> certpath</code>   | Displays the certification path of the specified local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.   |
| <code>show ca category {local remote} [name <i>certificate_name</i> format {text pem}]</code>  | Displays a summary of the certificates in the specified category (local for my certificates or remote for trusted certificates) or the details of a specified certificate. |
| <code>show ca validation name <i>name</i></code>   | Displays the validation configuration for the specified remote (trusted) certificate.  |
| <code>show ca spaceusage</code>  | Displays the storage space in use by certificates.   |

## 17.5 Certificates Commands Examples

The following example creates a self-signed X.509 certificate with IP address 10.0.0.58 as the common name. It uses the RSA key type with a 512 bit key. Then it displays the list of local certificates. Finally it deletes the pkcs12request certification request.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ca generate x509 name test_x509 cn-type ip cn 10.0.0.58 key-
type rsa key-len 512
Router(config)# show ca category local
certificate: default
  type: SELF
  subject: CN=nwa3160-n_00134905820A
  issuer: CN=nwa3160-n_00134905820A
  status: EXPIRED
  ID: nwa3160-n_00134905820A
  type: EMAIL
  valid from: 1970-01-01 02:09:16 GMT
  valid to: 1989-12-27 02:09:16 GMT
Router(config)# no ca category local pkcs12request
```

# CHAPTER 18

## System

This chapter provides information on the commands that correspond to what you can configure in the system screens.

### 18.1 System Overview

Use these commands to configure general Zyxel Device information, the system time and the console port connection speed for a terminal emulation program. They also allow you to configure DNS settings and determine which services/protocols can access which Zyxel Device zones (if any) from which computers.

### 18.2 Host Name Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the hostname and domain name. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 49 Command Summary: Host Name

| COMMAND                       | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| [no] domainname <domain_name> | Sets the domain name. The <code>no</code> command removes the domain name.<br><br><i>domain_name</i> : This name can be up to 254 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted. |
| [no] hostname <hostname>      | Sets a descriptive name to identify your Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command removes the host name.  |
| show fqdn                     | Displays the fully qualified domain name.  |

## 18.3 Roaming Group Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the roaming group. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 50 Command Summary: Host Name

| COMMAND                                    | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] <code>roaming group group_name</code> | <p>Sets the name of the roaming group to which the Zyxel Device belongs. The 802.11k neighbor list a client requests from the Zyxel Device is generated according to the roaming group and RCPI (Received Channel Power Indicator) value of its neighbor APs.</p> <p>When a client wants to roam from the current AP to another, other APs in the same roaming group or not in a roaming group will be candidates for roaming. Neighbor APs in a different roaming group will be excluded from the 802.11k neighbor lists even when the neighbor AP has the best signal strength.</p> <p>If the Zyxel Device's roaming group is not configured, any neighbor APs can be candidates for roaming.</p> <p>The <code>no</code> command removes the roaming group name.</p> <p><i>group_name</i>: This name can be up to 31 alphanumeric and @# characters. Dashes and underscores are also allowed. The name should start with a letter or digit.</p> |
| <code>show roaming group</code>            | Displays the name of the roaming group to which the Zyxel Device belongs.   |

## 18.4 Time and Date

For effective scheduling and logging, the Zyxel Device system time must be accurate. There is also a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server.

### 18.4.1 Date/Time Commands

The following table describes the commands available for date and time setup. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 51 Command Summary: Date/Time

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>clock date &lt;yyyy-mm-dd&gt; time &lt;hh:mm:ss&gt;</code> | Sets the new date in year, month and day format manually and the new time in hour, minute and second format. |
| [no] <code>clock daylight-saving</code>                          | Enables daylight saving. The <code>no</code> command disables daylight saving.                               |

Table 51 Command Summary: Date/Time (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| [no] clock saving-interval begin<br>{apr aug dec feb jan jul jun mar may nov oct sep} {1 2 3 4 last} {fri mon sat sun thu tue wed}<br>hh:mm end<br>{apr aug dec feb jan jul jun mar may nov oct sep} {1 2 3 4 last} {fri mon sat sun thu tue wed}<br>hh:mm offset | Configures the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts and ends. The no command removes the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts and ends.<br><br>offset: a number from 1 to 5.5 (by 0.5 increments) |
| clock time hh:mm:ss   | Sets the new time in hour, minute and second format.  |
| [no] clock time-zone {- +hh:mm}   | Sets your time zone. The no command removes time zone settings.   |
| [no] ntp  | Saves your date and time and time zone settings and updates the data and time every 24 hours. The no command stops updating the data and time every 24 hours.   |
| [no] ntp server {fqdn w.x.y.z}  | Sets the IP address or URL of your NTP time server. The no command removes time server information.   |
| ntp sync  | Gets the time and date from a NTP time server.  |
| show clock date   | Displays the current date of your Zyxel Device.   |
| show clock status   | Displays your time zone and daylight saving settings.   |
| show clock time   | Displays the current time of your Zyxel Device.   |
| show ntp server   | Displays time server settings.  |

## 18.5 Console Port Speed

This section shows you how to set the console port speed when you connect to the Zyxel Device via the console port using a terminal emulation program. The following table describes the console port commands. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 52 Command Summary: Console Port Speed

| COMMAND                            | DESCRIPTION  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| [no] console baud <i>baud_rate</i> | Sets the speed of the console port. The no command resets the console port speed to the default (115200).<br><br><i>baud_rate</i> : 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600 or 115200. |
| show console                       | Displays console port speed.   |

## 18.6 DNS Overview

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it.

### 18.6.1 DNS Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 53 Input Values for General DNS Commands

| LABEL                 | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>address_object</i> | The name of the IP address (group) object. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.                                      |
| <i>interface_name</i> | The name of the interface.<br><br>Ethernet interface: <i>gex</i> , <i>x</i> = 1 - N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet interface for your Zyxel Device model.<br><br>VLAN interface: <i>vlanx</i> , <i>x</i> = 0 - 511. |

The following table describes the commands available for DNS. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 54 Command Summary: DNS

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] ip dns server a-record <i>fqdn</i> <i>w.x.y.z</i></code>  | Sets an A record that specifies the mapping of a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to an IP address. The <code>no</code> command deletes an A record.  |
| <code>ip dns server cache-flush</code>   | Clears the DNS server cache.  |
| <code>[no] ip dns server mx-record <i>domain_name</i> {<i>w.x.y.z</i> <i>fqdn</i>}</code>  | Sets a MX record that specifies a mail server that is responsible for handling the mail for a particular domain. The <code>no</code> command deletes a MX record.   |
| <code>ip dns server rule {&lt;1..32&gt; append insert &lt;1..32&gt;} access-group {ALL <i>profile_name</i>} zone {ALL <i>profile_name</i>} action {accept deny}</code>                             | Sets a service control rule for DNS requests.   |
| <code>ip dns server rule move &lt;1..32&gt; to &lt;1..32&gt;</code>  | Changes the number of a service control rule.   |
| <code>ip dns server zone-forwarder {&lt;1..32&gt; append insert &lt;1..32&gt;} {<i>domain_zone_name</i> *} user-defined <i>w.x.y.z</i> [private   interface {<i>interface_name</i>   auto}]</code> | Sets a domain zone forwarder record that specifies a DNS server's IP address.<br><br>private   interface: Use private if the Zyxel Device connects to the DNS server through a VPN tunnel. Otherwise, use the interface command to set the interface through which the Zyxel Device sends DNS queries to a DNS server. The auto means any interface that the Zyxel Device uses to send DNS queries to a DNS server according to the routing rule. |
| <code>ip dns server zone-forwarder move &lt;1..32&gt; to &lt;1..32&gt;</code>  | Changes the index number of a zone forwarder record.  |
| <code>no ip dns server rule &lt;1..32&gt;</code>   | Deletes a service control rule.   |

Table 54 Command Summary: DNS (continued)

| COMMAND                                  | DESCRIPTION                                      |
|--|--|
| <code>show ip dns server database</code> | Displays all configured records.                 |
| <code>show ip dns server status</code>   | Displays whether this service is enabled or not. |

## 18.6.2 DNS Command Example

This command sets an A record that specifies the mapping of a fully qualified domain name (www.abc.com) to an IP address (210.17.2.13).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip dns server a-record www.abc.com 210.17.2.13
```

## 18.7 Power Mode

This section shows you how to configure and view the Zyxel Device's power settings. The following table describes the power mode commands. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 55 Command Summary: Power Mode

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] override-full-power activate</code> | <p>Forces the Zyxel Device to draw full power from the power sourcing equipment. This improves performance in cases when a PoE injector that does not support PoE negotiation is used.</p> <p>Use the <code>no</code> command to disable this feature.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only enable this if you are using a passive PoE injector that is not IEEE 802.3at/bt compliant but can still provide full power.</p>   |
| <code>show override-full-power status</code>   | Displays whether the Zyxel Device is forced to draw full power from the power sourcing equipment.   |
| <code>show power mode</code>                   | <p>Displays the Zyxel Device's power status.</p> <p><b>Full</b> - the Zyxel Device receives power using a power adaptor and/or through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus.</p> <p><b>Limited</b> - the Zyxel Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3af PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adaptor.</p> <p>When the Zyxel Device is in limited power mode, the Zyxel Device throughput decreases and has just one transmitting radio chain.</p> <p>It always shows <b>Full</b> if the Zyxel Device does not support power detection.</p> |

# CHAPTER 19

## System Remote Management

This chapter shows you how to determine which services/protocols can access which Zyxel Device zones (if any) from which computers.

Note: To allow the Zyxel Device to be accessed from a specified computer using a service, make sure you do not have a service control rule or to-Zyxel Device rule to block that traffic.

### 19.1 System Timeout

There is a lease timeout for administrators. The Zyxel Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling.

Each user is also forced to log in the Zyxel Device for authentication again when the reauthentication time expires.

### 19.2 HTTP/HTTPS Commands

The following table describes the commands available for HTTP/HTTPS. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 56 Command Summary: HTTP/HTTPS

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>[no] ip http authentication <i>auth_method</i></code> | Sets an authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server. The <code>no</code> command resets the authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server to the factory default ( <code>default</code> ).<br><br><i>auth_method</i> : The name of the authentication method. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <code>[no] ip http port &lt;1..65535&gt;</code>             | Sets the HTTP service port number. The <code>no</code> command resets the HTTP service port number to the factory default (80).  |
| <code>[no] ip http secure-port &lt;1..65535&gt;</code>      | Sets the HTTPS service port number. The <code>no</code> command resets the HTTPS service port number to the factory default (443).   |

Table 56 Command Summary: HTTP/HTTPS (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| [no] ip http secure-server   | Enables HTTPS access to the Zyxel Device web configurator. The <b>no</b> command disables HTTPS access to the Zyxel Device web configurator.   |
| [no] ip http secure-server auth-client   | Sets the client to authenticate itself to the HTTPS server. The <b>no</b> command sets the client not to authenticate itself to the HTTPS server.  |
| [no] ip http secure-server cert <i>certificate_name</i>  | Specifies a certificate used by the HTTPS server. The <b>no</b> command resets the certificate used by the HTTPS server to the factory default ( <b>default</b> ).<br><br><i>certificate_name</i> : The name of the certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.- characters.   |
| [no] ip http secure-server force-redirect  | Redirects all HTTP connection requests to a HTTPS URL. The <b>no</b> command disables forwarding HTTP connection requests to a HTTPS URL.  |
| ip http secure-server cipher-suite { <i>cipher_algorithm</i> } [ <i>cipher_algorithm</i> ] [ <i>cipher_algorithm</i> ] [ <i>cipher_algorithm</i> ] | Sets the encryption algorithms (up to four) that the Zyxel Device uses for the SSL in HTTPS connections and the sequence in which it uses them. The <i>cipher_algorithm</i> can be any of the following.<br><br>rc4: RC4 (RC4 may impact the Zyxel Device's CPU performance since the Zyxel Device's encryption accelerator does not support it).<br><br>aes: AES<br><br>des: DES<br><br>3des: Triple DES. |
| no ip http secure-server cipher-suite { <i>cipher_algorithm</i> }  | Has the Zyxel Device not use the specified encryption algorithm for the SSL in HTTPS connections.  |
| [no] ip http server  | Allows HTTP access to the Zyxel Device web configurator. The <b>no</b> command disables HTTP access to the Zyxel Device web configurator.  |
| show ip http server status   | Displays HTTP settings.  |
| show ip http server secure status  | Displays HTTPS settings.   |

## 19.2.1 HTTP/HTTPS Command Examples

This command sets an authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server to authenticate the client(s).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http authentication Example
```

This following example sets a certificate named MyCert used by the HTTPS server to authenticate itself to the SSL client.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http secure-server cert MyCert
```

## 19.3 SSH

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

### 19.3.1 SSH Implementation on the Zyxel Device

Your Zyxel Device supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA authentication and four encryption methods (AES, 3DES, Archfour, and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Zyxel Device for remote management on port 22 (by default).

### 19.3.2 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Zyxel Device over SSH.

### 19.3.3 SSH Commands

The following table describes the commands available for SSH. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 57 Command Summary: SSH

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] ip ssh server</code>                              | Allows SSH access to the Zyxel Device CLI. The <code>no</code> command disables SSH access to the Zyxel Device CLI.   |
| <code>[no] ip ssh server cert <i>certificate_name</i></code> | Sets a certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the Zyxel Device for SSH connections. The <code>no</code> command resets the certificate used by the SSH server to the factory default (default).<br><br><i>certificate_name</i> : The name of the certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and <code>~!@#\$\$%^&amp;()_+[]{}',.-</code> characters. |
| <code>[no] ip ssh server port &lt;1..65535&gt;</code>        | Sets the SSH service port number. The <code>no</code> command resets the SSH service port number to the factory default (22).   |
| <code>[no] ip ssh server v1</code>                           | Enables remote management using SSH v1. The <code>no</code> command stops the Zyxel Device from using SSH v1.   |
| <code>show ip ssh server status</code>                       | Displays SSH settings.  |

### 19.3.4 SSH Command Examples

This command sets a certificate (Default) to be used to identify the Zyxel Device.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip ssh server cert Default
```

## 19.4 Configuring FTP

You can upload and download the Zyxel Device's firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

### 19.4.1 FTP Commands

The following table describes the commands available for FTP. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 58 Command Summary: FTP

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] ip ftp server</code>                              | Allows FTP access to the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command disables FTP access to the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>[no] ip ftp server cert <i>certificate_name</i></code> | Sets a certificate to be used to identify the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command resets the certificate used by the FTP server to the factory default. |
| <code>[no] ip ftp server port &lt;1..65535&gt;</code>        | Sets the FTP service port number. The <code>no</code> command resets the FTP service port number to the factory default (21).                                 |
| <code>[no] ip ftp server tls-required</code>                 | Allows FTP access over TLS. The <code>no</code> command disables FTP access over TLS.   |
| <code>show ip ftp server status</code>                       | Displays FTP settings.  |

### 19.4.2 FTP Commands Examples

This command displays FTP settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show ip ftp server status
active      : yes
port        : 21
certificate: default
TLS         : no
service control:
No.  Zone                Address                Action
=====
```

## 19.5 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your Zyxel Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network. The Zyxel Device supports SNMP version one (v1) and version three (v3). Check the feature comparison table in [Section 1.2 on page 12](#) to see which models support the SNMP feature.

## 19.5.1 Supported MIBs

The Zyxel Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215. The Zyxel Device also supports private MIBs (ZYXEL-ES-SMI.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-CAPWAP.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-COMMON.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-HybridAP.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-ProWLAN.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-RFMGMT.MIB and ZYXEL-ES-WIRELESS.MIB) to collect information about CPU and memory usage. The focus of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance. You can download the Zyxel Device's MIBs from [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com).

## 19.5.2 SNMP Traps

The Zyxel Device will send traps to the SNMP manager when any one of the following events occurs:

Table 59 SNMP Traps

| OBJECT LABEL          | OBJECT ID           | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--|
| Cold Start            | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1 | This trap is sent when the Zyxel Device is turned on or an agent restarts. |
| linkDown              | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3 | This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.                          |
| linkUp                | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4 | This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.                            |
| authenticationFailure | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5 | This trap is sent when an SNMP request comes from non-authenticated hosts. |

## 19.5.3 SNMP Commands

The following table describes the commands available for SNMP. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 60 Command Summary: SNMP

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] snmp-server version &lt;v2c v3&gt;</code>   | Sets the SNMP version support. The <code>no</code> command removes the SNMP version support.  |
| <code>[no] snmp-server host {fqdn w.x.y.z} [community_string]</code>   | Sets the domain name or IP address of the host that receives the SNMP notifications. The <code>no</code> command removes the host that receives the SNMP notifications. |
| <code>[no] snmp-server enable traps {wireless capwap}</code>   | Sets the trap control to receive the wireless/capwap trap notifications. The <code>no</code> command removes the wireless/capwap trap notifications.                    |
| <code>snmp-server v3user username &lt;username&gt; authentication &lt;none MD5 SHA&gt; privacy &lt;none DES AES&gt; privilege &lt;ro rw&gt;</code> | Sets the SNMPv3 user account and its privilege of read-only (ro) or read-write (rw) access.   |
| <code>no snmp-server v3user username &lt;username&gt;</code>   | The <code>no</code> command removes the SNMPv3 user account.  |
| <code>show snmp status</code>  | Displays SNMP settings.   |
| <code>show snmp-server v3user status</code>  | Displays SNMPv3 user status.  |
| <code>[no] snmp-server</code>  | Allows SNMP access to the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command disables SNMP access to the Zyxel Device.   |

Table 60 Command Summary: SNMP (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] snmp-server community <i>community_string</i> {ro rw} | Sets the password for read-only (ro) or read-write (rw) access. Enters up to 63 single-byte characters, including 0-9a-zA-Z._. The first character cannot be a period (.).<br><br>The no command resets the password for read-only (ro) or read-write (rw) access to the default. |
| [no] snmp-server contact <i>description</i>                | Sets the contact information (of up to 60 characters) for the person in charge of the Zyxel Device. The no command removes the contact information for the person in charge of the Zyxel Device.  |
| [no] snmp-server enable {informs traps}                    | Enables all SNMP notifications (informs or traps). The no command disables all SNMP notifications (informs or traps).   |
| [no] snmp-server location <i>description</i>               | Sets the geographic location (of up to 60 characters) for the Zyxel Device. The no command removes the geographic location for the Zyxel Device.  |
| [no] snmp-server port <1..65535>                           | Sets the SNMP service port number. The no command resets the SNMP service port number to the factory default (161).   |

# CHAPTER 20

## AAA Server

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the Zyxel Device to use external authentication servers.

### 20.1 AAA Server Overview

You can use an AAA (Authentication, Authorization, Accounting) server to provide access control to your network.

The following lists the types of authentication server the Zyxel Device supports.

- Local user database

The Zyxel Device uses the built-in local user database to authenticate administrative users logging into the Zyxel Device's web configurator or network access users logging into the network through the Zyxel Device. You can also use the local user database to authenticate VPN users.

- Directory Service (LDAP/AD)

LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)/AD (Active Directory) is a directory service that is both a directory and a protocol for controlling access to a network. The directory consists of a database specialized for fast information retrieval and filtering activities. You create and store user profile and login information on the external server.

- RADIUS

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) authentication is a popular protocol used to authenticate users by means of an external or built-in RADIUS server. RADIUS authentication allows you to validate a large number of users from a central location.

### 20.2 Authentication Server Command Summary

This section describes the commands for authentication server settings.

#### 20.2.1 radius-server Commands

The following table lists the `radius-server` commands you use to set the default RADIUS server.

Table 61 radius-server Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show radius-server</code>  | Displays the default RADIUS server settings.  |
| <code>[no] radius-server host<br/>radius_server auth-port auth_port</code> | Sets the RADIUS server address and service port number. Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of a RADIUS server. The <code>no</code> command clears the settings. |

Table 61 radius-server Commands (continued)

| COMMAND                                | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| [no] radius-server key <i>secret</i>   | Sets a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the RADIUS server and the Zyxel Device. The no command clears this setting. |
| [no] radius-server timeout <i>time</i> | Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting.   |

## 20.2.2 radius-server Command Example

The following example sets the secret key and timeout period of the default RADIUS server (172.23.10.100) to "87643210" and 80 seconds.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# radius-server host 172.23.10.100 auth-port 1812
Router(config)# radius-server key 876543210
Router(config)# radius-server timeout 80
Router(config)# show radius-server
host                : 172.23.10.100
authentication port: 1812
key                 : 876543210
timeout             : 80
Router(config)#
```

## 20.2.3 aaa group server ad Commands

The following table lists the aaa group server ad commands you use to configure a group of AD servers.

Table 62 aaa group server ad Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| clear aaa group server ad [ <i>group-name</i> ]         | Deletes all AD server groups or the specified AD server group.<br><br>Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.                   |
| show aaa group server ad <i>group-name</i>              | Displays the specified AD server group settings.  |
| [no] aaa group server ad <i>group-name</i>              | Sets a descriptive name for an AD server group. Use this command to enter the sub-command mode.<br><br>The no command deletes the specified server group. |
| aaa group server ad rename <i>group-name group-name</i> | Changes the descriptive name for an AD server group.  |
| aaa group server ad <i>group-name</i>                   | Enter the sub-command mode to configure an AD server group.   |
| [no] server alternative-cn-identifier <i>uid</i>        | Sets the second type of identifier that the users can use to log in if any. For example "name" or "e-mail address". The no command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server basedn <i>basedn</i>                        | Sets the base DN to point to the AD directory on the AD server group. The no command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server binddn <i>binddn</i>                        | Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the AD server group. The no command clears this setting.   |

Table 62 aaa group server ad Commands (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| [no] server cn-identifier <i>uid</i>                             | Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the AD server group. The <b>no</b> command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server description <i>description</i>                       | Sets the descriptive information for the AD server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The <b>no</b> command clears the setting.   |
| [no] server group-attribute <i>group-attribute</i>               | <p>Sets the name of the attribute that the Zyxel Device is to check to determine to which group a user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group a user belongs. You can add ext-group-user user objects to identify groups based on these group identifier values.</p> <p>For example you could have an attribute named "memberOf" with values like "sales", "RD", and "management". Then you could also create an ext-group-user user object for each group. One with "sales" as the group identifier, another for "RD" and a third for "management". The <b>no</b> command clears the setting.</p> |
| [no] server host <i>ad_server</i>                                | Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of an AD server to add to this group. The <b>no</b> command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server password <i>password</i>                             | Sets the bind password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The <b>no</b> command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server domain-auth activate                                 | Activates server domain authentication. The <b>no</b> parameter deactivates it.  |
| server domain-auth username<br>[username] password<br>[password] | Sets the user name and password for domain authentication.   |
| server domain-auth realm<br>[realm]                              | Sets the realm for domain authentication.  |
| [no] server port <i>port_no</i>                                  | Sets the AD port number. Enter a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 389. The <b>no</b> command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server search-time-limit <i>time</i>                        | Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The <b>no</b> command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.   |
| [no] server ssl  | Enables the Zyxel Device to establish a secure connection to the AD server. The <b>no</b> command disables this feature.   |

## 20.2.4 aaa group server ldap Commands

The following table lists the `aaa group server ldap` commands you use to configure a group of LDAP servers.

Table 63 aaa group server ldap Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| clear aaa group server ldap<br>[ <i>group-name</i> ] | <p>Deletes all LDAP server groups or the specified LDAP server group.</p> <p>Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.</p> |
| show aaa group server ldap <i>group-name</i>         | Displays the specified LDAP server group settings.   |

Table 63 aaa group server ldap Commands (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| [no] aaa group server ldap <i>group-name</i>              | Sets a descriptive name for an LDAP server group. Use this command to enter the sub-command mode.<br><br>The no command deletes the specified server group.  |
| aaa group server ldap rename <i>group-name group-name</i> | Changes the descriptive name for an LDAP server group.   |
| aaa group server ldap <i>group-name</i>                   | Enter the sub-command mode.  |
| [no] server alternative-cn-identifier <i>uid</i>          | Sets the second type of identifier that the users can use to log in if any. For example "name" or "e-mail address". The no command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server basedn <i>basedn</i>                          | Sets the base DN to point to the LDAP directory on the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server binddn <i>binddn</i>                          | Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server cn-identifier <i>uid</i>                      | Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server description <i>description</i>                | Sets the descriptive information for the LDAP server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The no command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server group-attribute <i>group-attribute</i>        | Sets the name of the attribute that the Zyxel Device is to check to determine to which group a user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group a user belongs. You can add ext-group-user user objects to identify groups based on these group identifier values.<br><br>For example you could have an attribute named "memberOf" with values like "sales", "RD", and "management". Then you could also create an ext-group-user user object for each group. One with "sales" as the group identifier, another for "RD" and a third for "management". The no command clears the setting. |
| [no] server host <i>ldap_server</i>                       | Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of an LDAP server to add to this group. The no command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server password <i>password</i>                      | Sets the bind password (up to 15 characters). The no command clears this setting.  |
| [no] server port <i>port_no</i>                           | Sets the LDAP port number. Enter a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 389. The no command clears this setting.   |
| [no] server search-time-limit <i>time</i>                 | Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.  |
| [no] server ssl   | Enables the Zyxel Device to establish a secure connection to the LDAP server. The no command disables this feature.  |

## 20.2.5 aaa group server radius Commands

The following table lists the `aaa group server radius` commands you use to configure a group of RADIUS servers.

Table 64 aaa group server radius Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>clear aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i></code>                              | Deletes all RADIUS server groups or the specified RADIUS server group.<br><br>Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.   |
| <code>show aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i></code>                               | Displays the specified RADIUS server group settings.  |
| <code>[no] aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i></code>                               | Sets a descriptive name for the RADIUS server group. The <code>no</code> command deletes the specified server group.  |
| <code>aaa group server radius rename {<i>group-name-old</i>} <i>group-name-new</i></code> | Sets the server group name.   |
| <code>aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i></code>                                    | Enter the sub-command mode.   |
| <code>[no] server description <i>description</i></code>                                   | Sets the descriptive information for the RADIUS server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The <code>no</code> command clears the setting.  |
| <code>[no] server group-attribute &lt;1-255&gt;</code>                                    | Sets the value of an attribute that the Zyxel Device is used to determine to which group a user belongs.<br><br>This attribute's value is called a group identifier. You can add <b>ext-group-user</b> user objects to identify groups based on different group identifier values.<br><br>For example, you could configure attributes 1,10 and 100 and create a <b>ext-group-user</b> user object for each of them. The <code>no</code> command clears the setting. |
| <code>[no] server host <i>radius_server</i></code>  | Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of a RADIUS server to add to this server group. The <code>no</code> command clears this setting.   |
| <code>[no] server key <i>secret</i></code>  | Sets a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the RADIUS server(s) and the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command clears this setting.  |
| <code>[no] server timeout <i>time</i></code>  | Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The <code>no</code> command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.  |

## 20.2.6 aaa group server Command Example

The following example creates a RADIUS server group with two members and sets the secret key to "12345678" and the timeout to 100 seconds. Then this example also shows how to view the RADIUS group settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa group server radius RADIUSGroup1
Router(group-server-radius)# server host 192.168.1.100 auth-port 1812
Router(group-server-radius)# server host 172.16.12.100 auth-port 1812
Router(group-server-radius)# server key 12345678
Router(group-server-radius)# server timeout 100
Router(group-server-radius)# exit
Router(config)# show aaa group server radius RADIUSGroup1
key                : 12345678
timeout            : 100
description        :
group attribute    : 11
```

| No. | Host Member   | Auth. Port |
|-----|---------------|------------|
| 1   | 192.168.1.100 | 1812       |
| 2   | 172.16.12.100 | 1812       |

# CHAPTER 21

## Authentication Objects

This chapter shows you how to select different authentication methods for user authentication using the AAA servers or the internal user database.

### 21.1 Authentication Objects Overview

After you have created the AAA server objects, you can specify the authentication objects (containing the AAA server information) that the Zyxel Device uses to authenticate users (such as managing through HTTP/HTTPS or Captive Portal).

### 21.2 aaa authentication Commands

The following table lists the `aaa authentication` commands you use to configure an authentication profile.

Table 65 aaa authentication Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>aaa authentication rename</code><br><i>profile-name-old profile-name-new</i> | Changes the profile name.<br><br><i>profile-name</i> : You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. |
| <code>clear aaa authentication</code><br><i>profile-name</i>                       | Deletes all authentication profiles or the specified authentication profile.<br><br>Note: You can NOT delete a profile that is currently in use.  |
| <code>show aaa authentication</code><br>{ <i>group-name</i>  default}              | Displays the specified authentication server profile settings.  |
| [no] <code>aaa authentication</code><br><i>profile-name</i>                        | Sets a descriptive name for the authentication profile. The <code>no</code> command deletes a profile.  |
| [no] <code>aaa authentication</code><br>{ <i>profile-name</i> } local              | Creates an authentication profile to authenticate users using the local user database   |

Table 65 aaa authentication Commands (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] aaa authentication<br>default <i>member1</i> [ <i>member2</i> ]<br>[ <i>member3</i> ] [ <i>member4</i> ]      | Sets the default profile to use the authentication method(s) in the order specified.<br><br><i>member</i> = group radius, or local.<br><br>Note: You must specify at least one member for each profile.<br>Each type of member can only be used once in a profile.<br><br>The no command clears the specified authentication method(s) for the profile. |
| [no] aaa authentication<br><i>profile-name member1</i><br>[ <i>member2</i> ] [ <i>member3</i> ] [ <i>member4</i> ] | Sets the profile to use the authentication method(s) in the order specified.<br><br><i>member</i> = group radius, or local.<br><br>Note: You must specify at least one member for each profile.<br>Each type of member can only be used once in a profile.<br><br>The no command clears the specified authentication method(s) for the profile.         |

## 21.2.1 aaa authentication Command Example

The following example creates an authentication profile to authenticate users using the local user database.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa authentication LDAPuser group local
Router(config)# show aaa authentication LDAPuser
No. Method
=====
0      ldap
1      local
Router(config)#
```

## 21.3 test aaa Command

The following table lists the test aaa command you use to test a user account on an authentication server.

Table 66 test aaa Command

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| test aaa {server secure-server}<br>{ad ldap} host {hostname ipv4-address}<br>[host {hostname ipv4-address}] port<br><1..65535> base-dn base-dn-string [bind-<br>dn bind-dn-string password password]<br>login-name-attribute attribute<br>[alternative-login-name-attribute<br>attribute] account account-name | Tests whether a user account exists on the specified authentication server. |

### 21.3.1 Test a User Account Command Example

The following example shows how to test whether a user account named userABC exists on the AD authentication server which uses the following settings:

- IP address: 172.16.50.1
- Port: 389
- Base-dn: DC=Zyxel,DC=com
- Bind-dn: zyxel\engineerABC
- Password: abcdefg
- Login-name-attribute: sAMAccountName

The result shows the account exists on the AD server. Otherwise, the Zyxel Device returns an error.

```
Router> test aaa server ad host 172.16.50.1 port 389 base-dn DC=Zyxel,DC=com
bind-dn zyxel\engineerABC password abcdefg login-name-attribute
sAMAccountName account userABC

dn:: Q049MTIzNzco546L5aOr56uRKsXPVT1XaXRoTWFpbCxEQz1aeVhFTCxEQz1jb20=
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: user
cn:: MTIzNzco546L5aOr56uRKQ==
sn: User
l: 2341100
-----SNIP!-----
```

# CHAPTER 22

## File Manager

This chapter covers how to work with the Zyxel Device's firmware, certificates, configuration files, packet trace results, shell scripts and temporary files.

### 22.1 File Directories

The Zyxel Device stores files in the following directories.

Table 67 FTP File Transfer Notes

| DIRECTORY    | FILE TYPE  | FILE NAME EXTENSION |
|--------------|--|---------------------|
| A            | Firmware (upload only)   | bin                 |
| cert         | Non-PKCS#12 certificates   | cer                 |
| conf         | Configuration files  | conf                |
| packet_trace | Packet trace results (download only)   |                     |
| script       | Shell scripts  | .zysh               |
| tmp          | Temporary system maintenance files and crash dumps for technical support use (download only) |                     |

A. After you log in through FTP, you do not need to change directories in order to upload the firmware.

### 22.2 Configuration Files and Shell Scripts Overview

You can store multiple configuration files and shell script files on the Zyxel Device.

When you apply a configuration file, the Zyxel Device uses the factory default settings for any features that the configuration file does not include. Shell scripts are files of commands that you can store on the Zyxel Device and run when you need them. When you run a shell script, the Zyxel Device only applies the commands that it contains. Other settings do not change.

You can edit configuration files or shell scripts in a text editor and upload them to the Zyxel Device. Configuration files use a .conf extension and shell scripts use a .zysh extension.

These files have the same syntax, which is also identical to the way you run CLI commands manually. An example is shown below.

**Figure 12** Configuration File / Shell Script: Example

```
## enter configuration mode
configure terminal
# change administrator password
username admin password 4321 user-type admin
#configure default radio profile, change 2GHz channel to 11 & Tx output
power # to 50%
wlan-radio-profile default
2g-channel 11
output-power 50%
exit
write
```

While configuration files and shell scripts have the same syntax, the Zyxel Device applies configuration files differently than it runs shell scripts. This is explained below.

**Table 68** Configuration Files and Shell Scripts in the Zyxel Device

| Configuration Files (.conf)  | Shell Scripts (.zysh)  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Resets to default configuration.</li> <li>Goes into CLI <b>Configuration</b> mode.</li> <li>Runs the commands in the configuration file.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes into CLI <b>Privilege</b> mode.</li> <li>Runs the commands in the shell script.</li> </ul> |

You have to run the example in [Table 12 on page 127](#) as a shell script because the first command is run in **Privilege** mode. If you remove the first command, you have to run the example as a configuration file because the rest of the commands are executed in **Configuration** mode. (See [Section 2.5 on page 25](#) for more information about CLI modes.)

## 22.2.1 Comments in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

In a configuration file or shell script, use “#” or “!” as the first character of a command line to have the Zyxel Device treat the line as a comment.

Your configuration files or shell scripts can use “exit” or a command line consisting of a single “!” to have the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

Note: “exit” or “!” must follow sub commands if it is to make the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

In the following example lines 1 and 2 are comments. Line 5 exits sub command mode.

```
! this is from Joe
# on 2022/12/05
wlan-ssid-profile default
ssid Joe-AP
qos wmm
security default
!
```

## 22.2.2 Errors in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

When you apply a configuration file or run a shell script, the Zyxel Device processes the file line-by-line. The Zyxel Device checks the first line and applies the line if no errors are detected. Then it continues with the next line. If the Zyxel Device finds an error, it stops applying the configuration file or shell script and generates a log.

You can have the Zyxel Device to ignore errors and apply the valid parts of the configuration file every time you upload configuration files or only for the specific file you're uploading.

Use `setenv stop-on-error off` if you want the Zyxel Device to ignore errors and apply the valid parts of the configuration file every time you upload configuration files to the Zyxel Device.

Use `apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error`, for example, `apply /conf/ATPConfigFile.conf ignore-error`, to:

- Apply the valid parts of the configuration file.
- Generate error logs for all of the configuration file's errors.

This lets the Zyxel Device apply most of your configuration in the configuration file you just uploaded. You can refer to the logs for what to fix.

Use `apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error rollback`, for example, `apply /conf/ATPConfigFile.conf ignore-error rollback`, to:

- Generate error logs for all of the configuration file's errors.
- Start the Zyxel Device with the last fully valid configuration file.

This lets the Zyxel Device apply your current configuration file (usually the **startup-config.conf** file) instead of the configuration file you just uploaded. You can refer to the logs for what to fix.

See the table below for the comparison between these commands.

Table 69 Commands Comparison Table

| COMMAND   | EFFECTIVE   | RESULT   |
|---|---|--|
| <code>setenv stop-on-error off</code>                         | every time you upload configuration files<br><br>(until you apply the command <code>setenv stop-on-error on</code> )  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ignore errors</li> <li>• apply the valid parts of the configuration file</li> <li>• generate error logs</li> </ul>              |
| <code>setenv-startup stop-on-error off</code>                 | every time the Zyxel Device applies the <b>startup-config.conf</b> configuration files<br><br>(until you apply the command <code>setenv-startup stop-on-error on</code> ) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ignore errors</li> <li>• apply the valid parts of the <b>startup-config.conf</b> file</li> <li>• generate error logs</li> </ul> |
| <code>apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error</code>          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• only for the specific file</li> <li>• once</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ignore errors</li> <li>• apply the valid parts of the configuration file</li> <li>• generate error logs</li> </ul>              |
| <code>apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error rollback</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• only for the specific file</li> <li>• once</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ignore errors</li> <li>• apply the last applied configuration file</li> <li>• generate error logs</li> </ul>                    |

### 22.2.3 Zyxel Device Configuration File Details

You can store multiple configuration files on the Zyxel Device. You can also have the Zyxel Device use a different configuration file without the Zyxel Device restarting.

- When you first receive the Zyxel Device, it uses the **system-default.conf** configuration file of default settings.
- When you change the configuration, the Zyxel Device creates a **startup-config.conf** file of the current configuration.
- The Zyxel Device checks the **startup-config.conf** file for errors when it restarts. If there is an error in the **startup-config.conf** file, the Zyxel Device copies the **startup-config.conf** configuration file to the **startup-config-bad.conf** configuration file and tries the existing **lastgood.conf** configuration file.
- When the Zyxel Device reboots, if the **startup-config.conf** file passes the error check, the Zyxel Device keeps a copy of the **startup-config.conf** file as the **lastgood.conf** configuration file for you as a back up file. If you upload and apply a configuration file with an error, you can apply **lastgood.conf** to return to a valid configuration.

### 22.2.4 Configuration File Flow at Restart

If there is not a **startup-config.conf** when you restart the Zyxel Device (whether through a management interface or by physically turning the power off and back on), the Zyxel Device uses the **system-default.conf** configuration file with the Zyxel Device's default settings.

If there is a **startup-config.conf**, the Zyxel Device checks it for errors and applies it. If there are no errors, the Zyxel Device uses it and copies it to the **lastgood.conf** configuration file. If there is an error, the Zyxel Device generates a log and copies the **startup-config.conf** configuration file to the **startup-config-bad.conf** configuration file and tries the existing **lastgood.conf** configuration file. If there isn't a **lastgood.conf** configuration file or it also has an error, the Zyxel Device applies the **system-default.conf** configuration file.

You can change the way the **startup-config.conf** file is applied. Include the `setenv-startup stop-on-error off` command. The Zyxel Device ignores any errors in the **startup-config.conf** file and applies all of the valid commands. The Zyxel Device still generates a log for any errors.

### 22.2.5 Sensitive Data Protection

The Zyxel Device by default encrypts local admin and user account passwords for web configurator and CLI.

Enable **Sensitive Data Protection** to have the Zyxel Device use a private key to encrypt local admin and user account passwords for web configurator and CLI.

Note: You can only upload configuration files using FTP that are using the current private key of the Zyxel Device.

The following examples describe the situations you might come across using **Sensitive Data Protection**.

Example 1:

- 1 Download a configuration file (file1).
- 2 Enable **Sensitive Data Protection**.

- 3 Create a private key (key1).
- 4 When you upload file1 to the Zyxel Device through the Zyxel Device web configurator, you do not need to enter the private key (key1). Configuration file1 is not encrypted by the private key (key1).

Example2:

- 1 Enable **Sensitive Data Protection**.
- 2 Create an private key (key1).
- 3 Download a configuration file (file2).
- 4 You must use key1 to upload file2 to the Zyxel Device because file2 is encrypted by key1.

Example 3:

- 1 Change the private key from key1 to key2.
- 2 Download another configuration file (file3).
- 3 You must use key2 to upload file3 to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You must still use key1 to upload file2 to the Zyxel Device. Make a note of the key to use when you change the private key and then download a configuration file.

Example 4:

- 1 Enable **Sensitive Data Protection** on Zyxel Device1 and create a private key.
- 2 Download a configuration file from Zyxel Device1.
- 3 You must upload this configuration file using the private key you created on Zyxel Device1 to Zyxel Device2 even if **Sensitive Data Protection** is not enabled on Zyxel Device2.

## 22.3 File Manager Commands Input Values

The following table explains the values you can input with the file manager commands.

Table 70 File Manager Command Input Values

| LABEL                 | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>file_name</i>      | The name of a file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9; '~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.,=-).   |
| <i>encryption_key</i> | The encryption key the Zyxel Device uses to encrypt management passwords. Use 4 to 8 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9; '~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+={}  \:;<,>./  ). |

## 22.4 File Manager Commands Summary

The following table lists the commands that you can use for file management.

Table 71 File Manager Commands Summary

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>apply /conf/file_name.conf [ignore-error] [rollback]</code>  | <p>Has the Zyxel Device use a specific configuration file. You must still use the <code>write</code> command to save your configuration changes to the flash ("non-volatile" or "long term") memory.</p> <p>Use this command without specify both <code>ignore-error</code> and <code>rollback</code>: this is not recommended because it would leave the rest of the configuration blank. If the interfaces were not configured before the first error, the console port may be the only way to access the device.</p> <p>Use <code>ignore-error</code> without <code>rollback</code>: this applies the valid parts of the configuration file and generates error logs for all of the configuration file's errors. This lets the Zyxel Device apply most of your configuration and you can refer to the logs for what to fix.</p> <p>Use both <code>ignore-error</code> and <code>rollback</code>: this applies the last applied configuration file (usually the <b>startup-config.config</b> file), generates error logs for all of the configuration file's errors.</p> <p>Use <code>rollback</code> without <code>ignore-error</code>: this gets the Zyxel Device started with a fully valid configuration file as quickly as possible.</p> <p>You can use the "<code>apply /conf/system-default.conf</code>" command to reset the Zyxel Device to go back to its system defaults.</p> |
| <code>copy {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}file_name-a.conf {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/file_name-b.conf</code> | <p>Saves a duplicate of a file on the Zyxel Device from the source file name to the target file name.</p> <p>Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to copy and the directory and file name to use for the duplicate. Always copy the file into the same directory.</p>   |
| <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>  | Saves your configuration changes to the flash ("non-volatile" or "long term") memory. The Zyxel Device immediately uses configuration changes made via commands, but if you do not use this command or the <code>write</code> command, the changes will be lost when the Zyxel Device restarts.  |
| <code>copy running-config /conf/file_name.conf</code>  | Saves a duplicate of the configuration file that the Zyxel Device is currently using. You specify the file name to which to copy.  |
| <code>delete {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/file_name</code>  | Removes a file. Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to delete.   |
| <code>dir {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}</code>   | Displays the list of files saved in the specified directory.   |

Table 71 File Manager Commands Summary (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>rename {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/old-file_name {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/new-file_name</code> | Changes the name of a file.<br><br>Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to rename. Then specify the directory again followed by the new file name.   |
| <code>rename /script/old-file_name /script/new-file_name</code>   | Changes the name of a shell script.   |
| <code>run /script/file_name.zysh</code>   | Has the Zyxel Device execute a specific shell script file. You must still use the <code>write</code> command to save your configuration changes to the flash ("non-volatile" or "long term") memory.  |
| <code>show running-config</code>  | Displays the settings of the configuration file that the system is using.   |
| <code>setenv stop-on-error {on   off}</code>  | The <code>on</code> command has the Zyxel Device stop applying a configuration file when detecting any error in the configuration file. The Zyxel Device will leave the rest of the configuration as your previous configuration.<br><br>The <code>off</code> command has the Zyxel Device ignore any errors in configuration files and apply all of the valid commands.    |
| <code>setenv-startup stop-on-error {on   off}</code>  | The <code>on</code> command has the Zyxel Device stop applying the <code>startup-config.conf</code> file when there is any error. The Zyxel Device will then try to apply the <code>lastgood.conf</code> file.<br><br>The <code>off</code> command has the Zyxel Device ignore any errors in the <code>startup-config.conf</code> file and apply all of the valid commands. |
| <code>show setenv-startup</code>  | Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device is set to ignore any errors in the <code>startup-config.conf</code> file and apply all of the valid commands.  |
| <code>[no] private-encryption-key {encryption_key}</code>   | Enables sensitive data protection on the Zyxel Device and sets the encryption key.<br><br>You need this key to upload configuration files. Write down the key you set and keep it in a safe place.<br><br>Use the <code>[no] private-encryption-key</code> command to disable sensitive data protection.  |
| <code>show private-encryption-key status</code>   | Displays whether sensitive data protection is enabled on the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>cloud-firmware check</code>   | Displays if a new firmware is available for the Zyxel Device.   |
| <code>cloud-firmware upgrade</code>   | Upgrades the Zyxel Device to the latest firmware available.   |
| <code>cloud-firmware upgrade abort</code>   | Stops the Zyxel Device from upgrading to the latest firmware.   |

Table 71 File Manager Commands Summary (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show cloud-firmware {version  upgrade status}</code> | Displays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The latest firmware version available for your Zyxel Device.</li> <li>The firmware upgrade status.</li> </ul>  |
| <code>write</code>   | Saves your configuration changes to the flash ("non-volatile" or "long term") memory. The Zyxel Device immediately uses configuration changes made via commands, but if you do not use the <code>write</code> command, the changes will be lost when the Zyxel Device restarts. |

## 22.5 File Manager Command Example

This example saves a back up of the current configuration before applying a shell script file.

```
Router(config)# copy running-config /conf/backup.conf
Router(config)# run /script/mac_acl_setup.zysh
```

## 22.6 FTP File Transfer

You can use FTP to transfer files to and from the Zyxel Device for advanced maintenance and support.

### 22.6.1 Command Line FTP File Upload

- 1 Connect to the Zyxel Device.
- 2 Enter "bin" to set the transfer mode to binary.
- 3 You can upload the firmware after you log in through FTP. To upload other files, use "cd" to change to the corresponding directory.
- 4 Use "put" to transfer files from the computer to the Zyxel Device.<sup>1</sup> For example:  
In the conf directory, use "put config.conf today.conf" to upload the configuration file (config.conf) to the Zyxel Device and rename it "today.conf".  
"put 6.60(ABCD.0).bin" transfers the firmware (6.60(ABCD.0).bin) to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will automatically upgrade its firmware and reboot.

**The firmware update can take up to five minutes. Do not turn off or reset the Zyxel Device while the firmware update is in progress! If you lose power during the firmware upload, you may need to refer to [Section 22.8 on page 137](#) to recover the firmware.**

1. When you upload a custom signature, the Zyxel Device appends it to the existing custom signatures stored in the "custom.rules" file.

## 22.6.2 Command Line FTP Configuration File Upload Example

The following example transfers a configuration file named tomorrow.conf from the computer and saves it on the Zyxel Device as next.conf.

Note: Uploading a custom signature file named "custom.rules", overwrites all custom signatures on the Zyxel Device.

Note: The configuration file must use the same sensitive data protection settings as the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, the upload process will fail. See [Section 22.2.5 on page 129](#).

**Figure 13** FTP Configuration File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> cd conf
250 CWD command successful
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I
ftp> put tomorrow.conf next.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for next.conf
226-Post action ok!!
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 20231 bytes sent in 0.00Seconds 20231000.00Kbytes/sec.
```

## 22.6.3 Command Line FTP Firmware File Upload Example

The following example uploads firmware files - 610ABVT0b9.bin (incompatible) and 625ABVT0b5.bin (compatible) - from the computer to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You can check and download the firmware compatible with the Zyxel Device at [support.zyxel.com](http://support.zyxel.com).

Note: The Zyxel Device will not upgrade the firmware if the firmware file you upload is incompatible with the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 14** Successful FTP Firmware File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put D:\660ABTF0C0.bin
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 54522
226-File successfully transferred
226-1.214 seconds (measured here), 25.13 Mbytes per second
226-firmware verifying...
226-firmware updating...
226-Please Wait about 5 minutes!!
226-Do not poweroff or reset,
226-system will reboot automatically after finished updating.
226 226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 31996022 bytes sent in 1.19Seconds 26932.68Kbytes/sec.
```

**Figure 15** Unsuccessful FTP Firmware File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put D:\660ABTF0C0.bin
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 54816
226-File successfully transferred
226-1.657 seconds (measured here), 16.28 Mbytes per second
226-firmware verifying...
226 file damaged!!
ftp: 28297684 bytes sent in 1.66Seconds 17026.28Kbytes/sec.
```

## 22.6.4 Command Line FTP File Download

- 1 Connect to the Zyxel Device.
- 2 Enter "bin" to set the transfer mode to binary.
- 3 Use "cd" to change to the directory that contains the files you want to download.
- 4 Use "dir" or "ls" if you need to display a list of the files in the directory.

- 5 Use "get" to download files. For example:

"get vlan\_setup.zysh vlan.zysh" transfers the vlan\_setup.zysh configuration file on the Zyxel Device to your computer and renames it "vlan.zysh."

## 22.6.5 Command Line FTP Configuration File Download Example

The following example gets a configuration file named today.conf from the Zyxel Device and saves it on the computer as current.conf.

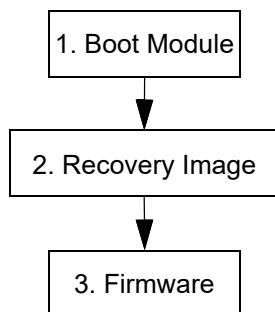
**Figure 16** FTP Configuration File Download Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.1]
User (192.168.1.1:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I
ftp> cd conf
250 CWD command successful
ftp> get today.conf current.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for conf/today.conf
(20220 bytes)
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 20220 bytes received in 0.03Seconds 652.26Kbytes/sec.
```

## 22.7 Zyxel Device File Usage at Startup

The Zyxel Device uses the following files at system startup.

**Figure 17** Zyxel Device File Usage at Startup



- 1 The boot module performs a basic hardware test. You cannot restore the boot module if it is damaged. The boot module also checks and loads the recovery image. The Zyxel Device notifies you if the recovery image is damaged.
- 2 The recovery image checks and loads the firmware. The Zyxel Device notifies you if the firmware is damaged.

## 22.8 Notification of a Damaged Recovery Image or Firmware

The Zyxel Device's recovery image and/or firmware could be damaged, for example by the power going off during a firmware upgrade. This section describes how the Zyxel Device notifies you of a damaged recovery image or firmware file. Use this section if your device has stopped responding for an extended period of time and you cannot access or ping it. Note that the Zyxel Device does not respond while starting up. It takes less than five minutes to start up with the default configuration, but the start up time increases with the complexity of your configuration.

- 1 Use a console cable and connect to the Zyxel Device via a terminal emulation program (such as HyperTerminal). Your console session displays the Zyxel Device's startup messages. If you cannot see any messages, check the terminal emulation program's settings (see [Section 2.2.1 on page 23](#)) and restart the Zyxel Device.
- 2 The system startup messages display followed by "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds."

Note: Do not press any keys at this point. Wait to see what displays next.

**Figure 18** System Startup Stopped

```

BootModule Version: V1.08 | 05/05/2006 11:42:55
DRAM: Size = 510 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 522240K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !

Kernel Version: V2.4.27-XL-2006-05-29 | 2006-05-29 15:23:46
ZLD Version: VZW1050_10_DailyBuild_New | 2006-05-29 15:18:37

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds
.....

```

- 3 If the console session displays "Invalid Firmware", or "Invalid Recovery Image", or the console freezes at "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds" for more than one minute, go to [Section 22.9 on page 138](#) to restore the recovery image.

**Figure 19** Recovery Image Damaged

```

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....

Invalid Recovery Image
ERROR
Enter Debug Mode
>

```

- 4 If "Connect a computer to port 1 and FTP to 192.168.1.1 to upload the new file" displays on the screen, the firmware file is damaged. Use the procedure in [Section 22.10 on page 139](#) to restore it. If the message does not display, the firmware is OK and you do not need to use the firmware recovery procedure.

Figure 20 Firmware Damaged

```
Building ...

Connect a computer to port 1 and FTP to 192.168.1.1 to upload the new file.
```

## 22.9 Restoring the Recovery Image

This procedure requires the Zyxel Device's recovery image. Download the firmware package from [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) and unzip it. The recovery image uses a .ri extension, for example, "1.01(XL.0)C0.ri". Do the following after you have obtained the recovery image file.

Note: You only need to use this section if you need to restore the recovery image.

- 1 Restart the Zyxel Device.
- 2 When "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds." displays, press a key to enter debug mode.

Figure 21 Enter Debug Mode

```
BootModule Version: V1.011 | 2007-03-30 12:22:57
DRAM: Size = 510 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 522240K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !

Kernel Version: V2.4.27-kernel-2006-08-21 | 2006-08-21 19:54:00
ZLD Version: V1.01(XL.0) | 2006-09-11 17:41:56

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
Enter Debug Mode

> █
```

- 3 Enter atuk to initialize the recovery process. If the screen displays "ERROR", enter atur to initialize the recovery process.

Note: You only need to use the atuk or atur command if the recovery image is damaged.

Figure 22 atuk Command for Restoring the Recovery Image

```
> atuk
This command is for restoring the "recovery image" (xxx.ri).
Use This command only when
1) the console displays "Invalid Recovery Image" or
2) the console freezes at "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds"
   for more than one minute.

Note:
Please exit this command immediately if you do not need to restore the
"recovery image".

Do you want to start the recovery process (Y/N)? (default N) █
```

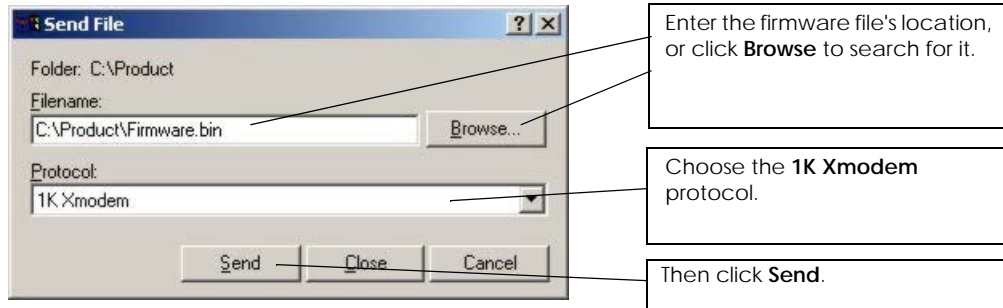
- 4 Enter `x` and wait for the "Starting XMODEM upload" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.

### Figure 23 Starting Xmodem Upload

```
Do you want to start the recovery process (Y/N)? (default N)
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
C
```

- This is an example Xmodem configuration upload using HyperTerminal. Click **Transfer**, then **Send File** to display the following screen.

### Figure 24 Example Xmodem Upload



- 6** Wait for about three and a half minutes for the Xmodem upload to finish.

**Figure 25** Recovery Image Upload Complete

```
Total 1867264 bytes received.  
programming .....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
OK  
  
> █
```

- 7 Enter `atgo`. The Zyxel Device starts up. If “Connect a computer to port 1 and FTP to 192.168.1.1 to upload the new file” displays on the screen, the firmware file is damaged and you need to use the procedure in [Section 22.10 on page 139](#) to recover the firmware.

**Figure 26** atgo Debug Command

```
> atgo
Booting...
```

## 22.10 Restoring the Firmware

This procedure requires the Zyxel Device's firmware. Download the firmware package from [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) and unzip it. The firmware file uses a .bin extension, for example, "1.01(XL.0)C0.bin". Do the following after you have obtained the firmware file.

Note: This section is not for normal firmware uploads. You only need to use this section if you need to recover the firmware.

- 1 Connect your computer to the Zyxel Device's port 1 (only port 1 can be used).
- 2 The Zyxel Device's FTP server IP address for firmware recovery is 192.168.1.1, so set your computer to use a static IP address from 192.168.1.2 ~192.168.1.254.
- 3 Use an FTP client on your computer to connect to the Zyxel Device. For example, in the Windows command prompt, type `ftp 192.168.1.1`. Keep the console session connected in order to see when the firmware recovery finishes.
- 4 Hit enter to log in anonymously.
- 5 Set the transfer mode to binary (type `bin`).
- 6 Transfer the firmware file from your computer to the Zyxel Device. Enter `put` followed by the path and name of the firmware file. This examples uses `put e:\ftproot\ZLD_FW\1.01(XL.0)C0.bin`.

**Figure 27** FTP Firmware Transfer Command

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220-=(*)=-.:. << Welcome to PureFTPd 1.0.11 >> ..-=(<*)=-
220-You are user number 1 of 50 allowed
220-Local time is now 21:33 and the load is 0.01. Server port: 21.
220-Only anonymous FTP is allowed here
220 You will be disconnected after 15 minutes of inactivity.
User (192.168.1.1:(none)):
230 Anonymous user logged in
ftp> bi
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put E:\ftproot\ZLD_FW\100XL0c0\1.00(XL.0)C0.bin_
```

- 7 Wait for the file transfer to complete.

**Figure 28** FTP Firmware Transfer Complete

```
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 1564
226-87.0 Mbytes free disk space
226-File successfully transferred
226 3.231 seconds (measured here), 10.83 Mbytes per second
ftp: 36708858 bytes sent in 3.23Seconds 11350.91Kbytes/sec.
ftp> _
```

- 8 After the transfer is complete, "Firmware received" or "ZLD-current received" displays. Wait (up to four minutes) while the Zyxel Device recovers the firmware.

**Figure 29** Firmware Received and Recovery Started

```
Firmware received ...

[Update Filesystem]
  Updating Code
  ..
```

- 9 The console session displays "done" when the firmware recovery is complete. Then the Zyxel Device automatically restarts.

**Figure 30** Firmware Recovery Complete and Restart

```

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
done
[Update Kernel]
  Extracting Kernel Image
  ..
  done
  Writing Kernel Image ... done

[Update BootModule]
  Extracting BootModule Image
  .
  done
  Writing BootModule
  .....
done
Restarting system.

```

- 10 The username prompt displays after the Zyxel Device starts up successfully. The firmware recovery process is now complete and the Zyxel Device is ready to use.

**Figure 31** Restart Complete

```

Setting the System Clock using the Hardware Clock as reference...
System Clock set. Local time: Sun Jan 26 21:40:24 UTC 2003

Cleaning: /tmp /var/lock /var/run.
Initializing random number generator... done.
Initializing Debug Account Authentication Seed (DAAS)... done.
Lionic device init successfully
cavium nitrox device CN1005 init complete
INIT: Entering runlevel: 3
Starting zylog daemon: zylogd zylog starts.
Starting syslog-ng.
Starting uam daemon.
Starting app patrol daemon.
Starting periodic command scheduler: cron.
Start system daemon....
Got LINK_CHANGE
Port [0] is up --> Group [0] is up
Applying system configuration file, please wait...
System is configured successfully with startup-config.conf

Welcome

Username: 

```

# CHAPTER 23

## Logs

This chapter provides information about the Zyxel Device's logs.

Note: When the system log reaches the maximum number of log messages, new log messages automatically overwrite existing log messages, starting with the oldest existing log message first.

See [Section 1.2 on page 12](#) for the maximum number of system log messages in the Zyxel Device.

### 23.1 Log Commands Summary

The following table describes the values required for many log commands. Other values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 72 Input Values for Log Commands

| LABEL                   | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>module_name</i>      | The name of the category; kernel, syslog, .... The default category includes debugging messages generated by open source software. The all category includes all messages in all categories. |
| <i>ap_mac</i>           | The Ethernet MAC address for the specified Access Point.   |
| <i>pri</i>              | The log priority. Enter one of the following values: alert, crit, debug, emerg, error, info, notice, or warn.  |
| <i>ipv4</i>             | The standard version 4 IP address (such as 192.168.1.1).   |
| <i>service</i>          | The service object name.   |
| <i>keyword</i>          | The keyword search string. You may use up to 63 alphanumeric characters.   |
| <i>log_proto_accept</i> | The log protocol. Enter one of the following values: icmp, tcp, udp, or others.  |
| <i>config_interface</i> | The interface name. Enter up to 15 alphanumeric characters, including hyphens and underscores.   |

The following sections list the logging commands.

## 23.1.1 Log Entries Commands

This table lists the commands to look at log entries.

Table 73 logging Commands: Log Entries

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>show logging entries [priority <i>pri</i>] [category <i>module_name</i>] [srcip <i>ip</i>] [dstip <i>ip</i>] [service <i>service_name</i>] [begin &lt;1..1024&gt; end &lt;1..1024&gt;] [keyword <i>keyword</i>]</code> | Displays the selected entries in the system log.<br><br>PRI: alert   crit   debug   emerg   error   info   notice   warn<br><br><i>keyword</i> : You can use alphanumeric and ( ) + / : = ? ! * # @ \$ _ % - characters, and it can be up to 63 characters long. This searches the message, source, destination, and notes fields. |
| <code>show logging entries field <i>field</i> [begin &lt;1..1024&gt; end &lt;1..1024&gt;]</code>   | Displays the selected fields in the system log.<br><br><i>field</i> : time   msg   src   dst   note   pri   cat   all  |

## 23.1.2 System Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the system log settings.

Table 74 logging Commands: System Log Settings

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>show logging status system-log</code>  | Displays the current settings for the system log.  |
| <code>logging system-log category <i>module_name</i> {disable   level normal   level all}</code> | Specifies what kind of information, if any, is logged in the system log and debugging log for the specified category.                                    |
| <code>[no] logging system-log suppression interval &lt;10..600&gt;</code>                        | Sets the log consolidation interval for the system log. The <code>no</code> command sets the interval to ten.  |
| <code>[no] logging system-log suppression</code>   | Enables log consolidation in the system log. The <code>no</code> command disables log consolidation in the system log.                                   |
| <code>[no] connectivity-check continuous-log activate</code>                                     | Has the Zyxel Device generate a log for each connectivity check. The <code>no</code> command has the Zyxel Device only log the first connectivity check. |
| <code>show connectivity-check continuous-log status</code>                                       | Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device generates a log for each connectivity check.  |
| <code>clear logging system-log buffer</code>   | Clears the system log.   |

### 23.1.2.1 System Log Command Examples

The following command displays the current status of the system log.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show logging status system-log
18 events logged
suppression active : yes
suppression interval: 10
category settings :
  user : normal , zysh : normal ,
  built-in-service : normal , system : normal ,
  system-monitoring : no , connectivity-check: normal ,
  device-ha : normal , pki : normal ,
  interface : normal , interface-statistics: no ,
  traffic-log : no , file-manage : normal ,
  wlan : normal , daily-report : normal ,
  dhcp : normal , default : all ,
  capwap : normal , wlan-monitor : normal ,
  wlan-rogueap : normal , wlan-frame-capture: normal ,
  wlan-dcs : normal , wlan-load-balancing: normal ,
```

### 23.1.3 Debug Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the debug log settings.

Table 75 logging Commands: Debug Log Settings

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| show logging debug status  | Displays the current settings for the debug log.  |
| show logging debug entries [priority <i>pri</i> ]<br>[category <i>module_name</i> ] [srcip <i>ip</i> ] [dstip <i>ip</i> ]<br>[service <i>service_name</i> ] [begin <1..1024> end<br><1..1024>] [keyword <i>keyword</i> ] | Displays the selected entries in the debug log.<br><br><i>pri</i> : alert   crit   debug   emerg   error   info<br>  notice   warn<br><br><i>keyword</i> : You can use alphanumeric and<br>( ) + / : = ? ! * # @ \$ _ % - characters, and it can<br>be up to 63 characters long. This searches the<br>message, source, destination, and notes fields. |
| show logging debug entries field <i>field</i> [begin<br><1..1024> end <1..1024>]   | Displays the selected fields in the debug log.<br><br><i>field</i> : time   msg   src   dst   note   pri   cat<br>  all   |
| [no] logging debug suppression   | Enables log consolidation in the debug log. The<br>no command disables log consolidation in the<br>debug log.   |
| [no] logging debug suppression interval<br><10..600>   | Sets the log consolidation interval for the debug<br>log. The no command sets the interval to ten.  |
| clear logging debug buffer   | Clears the debug log.   |

## 23.1.4 Remote Syslog Server Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the remote syslog server settings.

Table 76 logging Commands: Remote Syslog Server Settings

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>show logging status syslog</code>  | Displays the current settings for the remote servers.  |
| <code>[no] logging syslog &lt;1..4&gt;</code>  | Enables the specified remote server. The <code>no</code> command disables the specified remote server.   |
| <code>[no] logging syslog &lt;1..4&gt; address {ip   hostname}</code>  | Sets the URL or IP address of the specified remote server. The <code>no</code> command clears this field.<br><br><i>hostname</i> : You may up to 63 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period. |
| <code>[no] logging syslog &lt;1..4&gt; {disable   level normal   level all}</code>   | Specifies what kind of information, if any, is logged for the specified category.  |
| <code>[no] logging syslog &lt;1..4&gt; facility {local_1   local_2   local_3   local_4   local_5   local_6   local_7}</code> | Sets the log facility for the specified remote server. The <code>no</code> command sets the facility to local_1.   |
| <code>[no] logging syslog &lt;1..4&gt; format {cef   vrpt}</code>  | Sets the format of the log information.<br><br><i>cef</i> : Common Event Format, syslog-compatible format.<br><br><i>vrpt</i> : Zyxel's Vantage Report, syslog-compatible format.  |

## 23.1.5 Email Profile Log Commands

Note: Not all models support the email profile log commands.

This table lists the commands for the email profile settings.

Table 77 logging Commands: Email Profile Settings

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>show logging status mail</code>                               | Displays the current settings for the email profiles.   |
| <code>[no] logging mail &lt;1..2&gt;</code>                         | Enables the specified email profile. The <code>no</code> command disables the specified e-mail profile.   |
| <code>[no] logging mail &lt;1..2&gt; address {ip   hostname}</code> | Sets the URL or IP address of the mail server for the specified email profile. The <code>no</code> command clears the mail server field.<br><br><i>hostname</i> : You may up to 63 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period. |
| <code>logging mail &lt;1..2&gt; sending_now</code>                  | Sends mail for the specified email profile immediately, according to the current settings.  |
| <code>[no] logging mail &lt;1..2&gt; authentication</code>          | Enables SMTP authentication. The <code>no</code> command disables SMTP authentication.  |

Table 77 logging Commands: Email Profile Settings (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| [no] logging mail <1..2> authentication<br>username <i>username</i> password <i>password</i> | Sets the username and password required by the SMTP mail server. The <b>no</b> command clears the username and password fields.<br><br><i>username</i> : You can use alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), and dashes (-), and it can be up to 31 characters long.<br><br><i>password</i> : You can use most printable ASCII characters. You cannot use square brackets [ ], double quotation marks ("), question marks (?), tabs or spaces. It can be up to 31 characters long. |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> {send-log-to   send-alerts-to} <i>e_mail</i>                        | Sets the email address for logs or alerts. The <b>no</b> command clears the specified field.<br><br><i>e_mail</i> : You can use up to 63 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), and you must use the @ character.  |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> subject <i>subject</i>  | Sets the subject line when the Zyxel Device mails to the specified email profile. The <b>no</b> command clears this field.<br><br><i>subject</i> : You can use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), or !@#%*( ) += ; : ' , . / characters.   |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> subject-appending<br>{date-time   system-name}                      | Sets the Zyxel Device to add the system date and time or the system name to the subject when the Zyxel Device mails to the specified email profile. The <b>no</b> command sets the Zyxel Device to not add the system date/time or system name to the subject.   |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> category <i>module_name</i><br>level {alert   all}                  | Specifies what kind of information is logged for the specified category. The <b>no</b> command disables logging for the specified category.  |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> schedule {full   hourly}  | Sets the email schedule for the specified e-mail profile. The <b>no</b> command clears the schedule field.   |
| logging mail <1..2> schedule daily hour<br><0..23> minute <0..59>                            | Sets a daily email schedule for the specified e-mail profile.  |
| logging mail <1..2> schedule weekly day <i>day</i><br>hour <0..23> minute <0..59>            | Sets a weekly email schedule for the specified e-mail profile.<br><br><i>day</i> : sun   mon   tue   wed   thu   fri   sat   |

### 23.1.5.1 Email Profile Command Examples

Note: Not all models support the email profile log commands.

The following commands set up email log 1.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# logging mail 1 address mail.zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 subject AAA
Router(config)# logging mail 1 authentication username lachang.li password
XXXXXX
Router(config)# logging mail 1 send-log-to lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 send-alerts-to lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 from lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 schedule weekly day mon hour 3 minute 3
Router(config)# logging mail 1
```

### 23.1.6 Console Port Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the console port settings.

Table 78 logging Commands: Console Port Settings

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| show logging status console  | Displays the current settings for the console log. (This log is not discussed above.)  |
| [no] logging console   | Enables the console log. The no command disables the console log.  |
| logging console category <i>module_name</i> level<br>{alert   crit   debug   emerg   error   info   notice   warn} | Controls whether or not debugging information for the specified priority is displayed in the console log, if logging for this category is enabled. |
| [no] logging console category <i>module_name</i>   | Enables logging for the specified category in the console log. The no command disables logging.  |

### 23.1.7 Access Point Logging Commands

This table lists the commands for the Access Point settings.

Note: For the purposes of this device's CLI, Access Points are referred to as WTPs.

Table 79 logging Commands: Access Point Settings

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| show wtp-logging status system-log [ <i>ap_mac</i> ]  | Displays the system log for the specified AP.   |
| show wtp-logging entries [priority <i>pri</i> ]<br>[category <i>module_name</i> ] [srcip <i>ipv4</i> ] [dstip <i>ipv4</i> ] [service <i>service</i> ] [srciface <i>config_interface</i> ] [dstiface <i>config_interface</i> ]<br>[protocol <i>log_proto_accept</i> ][begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [keyword <i>keyword</i> ] [ <i>ap_mac</i> ] | Displays only the specified log entries for the specified AP.   |
| show wtp-logging entries field<br>{srcif dstif proto time msg src dst note pri cat all} [begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [ <i>ap_mac</i> ]   | Displays only log entries for specified fields for the specified AP. You can display a range of field entries from 1-512. |
| show wtp-logging debug status <i>ap_mac</i>   | Displays the debug status of the specified AP.  |

Table 79 logging Commands: Access Point Settings (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>show wtp-logging debug entries [priority pri] [category module_name] [srcip ipv4] [dstip ipv4] [service service] [srciface config_interface] [dstiface config_interface] [protocol log_proto_accept ] [begin &lt;1..512&gt; end &lt;1..512&gt;] [keyword keyword] [ap_mac]</code> | Display only the specified debug log entries for the specified AP.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging % debug entries field { srcif dstif proto  time msg src dst note pri cat all} [begin &lt;1..1024&gt; end &lt;1..1024&gt;] [ap_mac]</code>  | Displays only the log entries for the specified fields for the specified AP. You can display a range of field entries from 1-1024. |
| <code>show wtp-logging status syslog [ap_mac]</code>  | Displays the logging status for the specified AP's syslog.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging status mail [ap_mac]</code>  | Displays the logging status for the specified AP's mail log.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging query-log ap_mac</code>  | Displays the specified AP's query log.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging query-dbg-log ap_mac</code>  | Displays the specified AP's query debug log.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging result-status</code>   | Displays the AP logging result status.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging dbg-result-status</code>   | Displays the AP logging debug result status.   |
| <code>show wtp-logging category</code>  | Displays the AP logging categories.  |
| <code>wtp-logging mail sending_now MAC</code>   | Sends the specified AP's mail log.   |
| <code>clear wtp-logging log-buffer MAC</code>   | Clears the specified AP's MAC address from the buffer.   |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging syslog syslog_range category module_name disable</code>  | Disables the logging of the specified syslog category.   |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging syslog syslog_range category module_name level {normal   all}</code>   | Enables logging of the specified syslog category and specifies the logging level.  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging mail mail_range category module_name level {alert   all}</code>  | Enables mail logging on APs for the specified category.  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging system-log category module_name level {normal   all }</code>   | Enables system logging on the APs for the specified category.  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging system-log category module_name disable</code>   | Disables system logging on the APs for the specified category.   |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging debug suppression</code>   | Enables debug logging suppression. Use the no parameter to disable.  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging debug suppression interval &lt;10..600&gt;</code>  | Enables debug logging suppression during the specified interval. Use the no parameter to disable.                                  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging console</code>   | Enables logging of console activity. Use the no parameter to disable.  |
| <code>[no] wtp-logging console category module_name level pri</code>  | Enables logging of the specified category at the specified priority level.   |

# CHAPTER 24

## Reports and Reboot

This chapter provides information about the report associated commands and how to restart the Zyxel Device using commands. It also covers the daily report e-mail feature.

### 24.1 Report Commands Summary

The following sections list the report and session commands.

#### 24.1.1 Report Commands

This table lists the commands for reports.

Table 80 report Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>[no] report</code>                                       | Begins data collection. The <code>no</code> command stops data collection.  |
| <code>show report status</code>                                | Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device is collecting data and how long it has collected data.   |
| <code>clear report [interface_name]</code>                     | Clears the report for the specified interface or for all interfaces.  |
| <code>show report [interface_name {ip   service   url}]</code> | Displays the traffic report for the specified interface and controls the format of the report. Formats are:<br><br><code>ip</code> - traffic by IP address and direction<br><br><code>service</code> - traffic by service and direction<br><br><code>url</code> - hits by URL |

## 24.1.2 Report Command Examples

The following commands start collecting data, display the traffic reports, and stop collecting data.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show report lan ip
No. IP Address      User                Amount              Direction
=====
1   192.168.1.4      admin              1273(bytes)         Outgoing
2   192.168.1.4      admin              711(bytes)          Incoming
Router(config)# show report lan service
No. Port  Service          Amount              Direction
=====
1   21      ftp              1273(bytes)         Outgoing
2   21      ftp              711(bytes)          Incoming
Router(config)# show report lan url
No. Hit      URL
=====
1   1          140.114.79.60
Router(config)# show report status
Report status: on
Collection period: 0 days 0 hours 0 minutes 18 seconds
```

## 24.2 Email Daily Report Commands

Note: Not all models support the email daily report commands.

The following table identifies the values used in some of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 81 Input Values for Email Daily Report Commands

| LABEL         | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------|---|
| <i>e_mail</i> | An e-mail address. You can use up to 80 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), periods (.), or dashes (-), and you must use the @ character. |

Use these commands to have the Zyxel Device e-mail you system statistics every day. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 82 Email Daily Report Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>show daily-report status</code>                      | Displays the e-mail daily report settings.              |
| <code>daily-report</code>                                  | Enter the daily report sub-command mode.                |
| <code>[no] activate</code>                                 | Turns daily e-mail reports on or off.                   |
| <code>smtp-address {ip   hostname}</code>                  | Sets the SMTP mail server IP address or domain name.    |
| <code>[no] smtp-auth activate</code>                       | Enables or disables SMTP authentication.                |
| <code>smtp-auth username username password password</code> | Sets the username and password for SMTP authentication. |

Table 82 Email Daily Report Commands (continued)

| COMMAND                              | DESCRIPTION   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| no smtp-address                      | Resets the SMTP mail server configuration.  |
| no smtp-auth username                | Resets the authentication configuration.  |
| mail-subject set <i>subject</i>      | Configures the subject of the report e-mails.   |
| no mail-subject set                  | Clears the configured subject for the report e-mails.   |
| [no] mail-subject append system-name | Determines whether the system name will be appended to the subject of report mail.  |
| [no] mail-subject append date-time   | Determine whether the sending date-time will be appended at subject of the report e-mails.  |
| mail-from <i>e_mail</i>              | Sets the sender value of the report e-mails.  |
| mail-to-1 <i>e_mail</i>              | Sets to whom the Zyxel Device sends the report e-mails (up to five recipients).   |
| mail-to-2 <i>e_mail</i>              | See above.  |
| mail-to-3 <i>e_mail</i>              | See above.  |
| mail-to-4 <i>e_mail</i>              | See above.  |
| mail-to-5 <i>e_mail</i>              | See above.  |
| [no] item ap-sta                     | This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the AP station statistics will be included in the report e-mails.                  |
| [no] item ap-traffic                 | This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the AP traffic statistics will be included in the report e-mails.                  |
| [no] item cpu-usage                  | Determines whether or not CPU usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.  |
| [no] item mem-usage                  | Determines whether or not memory usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.   |
| [no] item port-usage                 | Determines whether or not port usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.   |
| [no] item station-count              | This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the station statistics are included in the report e-mails.                         |
| [no] item wtp-tx                     | This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the Zyxel Device's outgoing traffic statistics are included in the report e-mails. |
| [no] item wtp-rx                     | This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the Zyxel Device's incoming traffic statistics are included in the report e-mails. |
| smtp-port <1..65535>                 | Sets the SMTP service port.   |
| no smtp-port                         | Resets the SMTP service port configuration.   |

Table 82 Email Daily Report Commands (continued)

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>smtp-tls {tls starttls}</code>                           | Sets how you want communications between the SMTP mail server and the Zyxel Device to be encrypted.<br><br><code>tls</code> : to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS).<br><br><code>starttls</code> : to upgrade a plain text connection to a secure connection using SSL/TLS. |
| <code>[no] smtp-tls activate</code>                            | Encrypts the communications between the SMTP mail server and the Zyxel Device. The <code>no</code> command disables communication encryption.  |
| <code>schedule hour &lt;0..23&gt; minute &lt;00..59&gt;</code> | Sets the time for sending out the report e-mails.  |
| <code>[no] reset-counter</code>                                | Determines whether or not to clear the report statistics data after successfully sending out a report e-mail.  |
| <code>reset-counter-now</code>                                 | Discards all report data and starts all of the counters over at zero.  |
| <code>send-now</code>  | Sends the daily e-mail report immediately.<br><br>let user actively send out the report e-mails.   |

## 24.2.1 Email Daily Report Example

Note: Not all models support the email daily report commands.

This example sets the Zyxel Device to send a daily report e-mail.

```
Router(config)# daily-report
Router(config-daily-report)# no activate
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-address example-SMTP-mail-server.com
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-subject set test subject
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-subject append system-name
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-subject append date-time
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-from my-email@example.com
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-2
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-3
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-to-4 my-email@example.com
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-5
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-auth activate
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-auth username 12345 password pass12345
Router(config-daily-report)# schedule hour 13 minutes 57
Router(config-daily-report)# no schedule reset-counter
Router(config-daily-report)# item cpu-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# item mem-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# item port-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# activate
Router(config-daily-report)# exit
Router(config)#
```

This displays the email daily report settings and has the Zyxel Device send the report now.

```
Router(config)# show daily-report status
email daily report status
=====
activate: no
scheduled time: 00:00
reset counter: no
smtp address:
smtp port: 25
smtp auth: no
smtp username:
smtp password:
mail subject:
append system name: no
append date time: no
mail from:
mail-to-1:
mail-to-2:
mail-to-3:
mail-to-4:
mail-to-5:
cpu-usage: yes
mem-usage: yes
port-usage: yes
ap-sta: no
ap-traffic: no
Router(config)#
```

## 24.3 Reboot

Use these commands to restart the device. You can reboot the Zyxel Device when the Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

If you made changes in the CLI, you have to use the `write` command to save the configurations before you reboot. Otherwise, the changes are lost when you reboot.

Table 83 Reboot Commands

| COMMAND                      | DESCRIPTION   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>reboot</code>          | Restarts the Zyxel Device.  |
| <code>schedule-reboot</code> | Enters the sub-command mode to configure schedule reboot settings.  |
| <code>[no] activate</code>   | <p>Enables schedule reboot to have the Zyxel Device restart at a specific time on selected days of the week.</p> <p>By scheduling a reboot, you can have the Zyxel Device refresh the network connections at a specified time, allowing automatic reconnection with WiFi clients in case of a connection failure.</p> |

Table 83 Reboot Commands (continued)

| COMMAND                                  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| [no] reboot-time <hh:mm>                 | Specifies the time of the day (in 24-hour format) to have the Zyxel Device automatically restart. For example, 23:00 is 11:00 PM.<br><br>The no command removes the reboot time setting you configured. |
| {no} <sun/ mon/ tue/ wed/ thu/ fri/ sat> | Specifies each day of the week to have the Zyxel Device automatically restart.<br><br>The no command removes the reboot weekday setting you configured.   |
| show schedule-reboot status              | Displays schedule reboot settings.  |

# CHAPTER 25

## Session Timeout

### 25.1 Session Timeout Commands

Use these commands to modify and display the session timeout values. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 84 Session Timeout Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>session timeout {udp-connect &lt;1..300&gt;   udp-deliver &lt;1..300&gt;   icmp &lt;1..300&gt;}</code>   | Sets the timeout for UDP sessions to connect or deliver and for ICMP sessions.  |
| <code>session timeout { tcp-close &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-closewait &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-established &lt;1..432000&gt;   tcp-finwait &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-lastack &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-synrecv &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-synsent &lt;1..300&gt;   tcp-timewait &lt;1..300&gt;   udp-connect &lt;1..300&gt;   ucp-deliver &lt;1..300&gt;   icmp &lt;1..300&gt; }</code> | Sets the timeout for TCP sessions in the ESTABLISHED, SYN_RECV, FIN_WAIT, SYN_SENT, CLOSE_WAIT, LAST_ACK, or TIME_WAIT state. |
| <code>show session timeout {icmp   tcp-timewait   udp}</code>  | Displays ICMP, TCP, and UDP session timeouts.   |

#### 25.1.1 Session Timeout Commands Example

The following example sets the UDP session connect timeout to 10 seconds, the UDP deliver session timeout to 15 seconds, and the ICMP timeout to 15 seconds.

```
Router(config)# session timeout udp-connect 10
Router(config)# session timeout udp-deliver 15
Router(config)# session timeout icmp 15
Router(config)# show session timeout udp
UDP session connect timeout: 10 seconds
UDP session deliver timeout: 15 seconds
Router(config)# show session timeout icmp
ICMP session timeout: 15 seconds
```

# CHAPTER 26

## LEDs

This chapter describes two features that controls the LEDs of your Zyxel Device - Locator and Suppression.

### 26.1 LED Suppression Mode

The LED Suppression feature allows you to control how the LEDs of your Zyxel Device behave after it's ready. The default LED suppression setting of your AP is different depending on your Zyxel Device model.

Note: When the Zyxel Device is booting or performing firmware upgrade, the LEDs will lit regardless of the setting in LED suppression.

### 26.2 LED Suppression Commands

Use these commands to set how you want the LEDs to behave after the device is ready. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 85 LED Suppression Commands

| COMMAND                               | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <code>led_suppress enable</code>      | Sets the LEDs of your Zyxel Device to turn off after it's ready.                  |
| <code>led_suppress disable</code>     | Sets the LEDs to stay lit after the Zyxel Device is ready.                        |
| <code>show led_suppress status</code> | Displays whether LED suppression mode is enabled or disabled on the Zyxel Device. |

#### 26.2.1 LED Suppression Commands Example

The following example activates LED suppression mode and displays the settings..

```
Router(config)# led_suppress enable
Router(config)# show led_suppress status
suppress mode status: Enable
```

### 26.3 LED Locator

The LED locator feature identifies the location of your WAC among several devices in the network. You can run this feature and set a timer.

## 26.4 LED Locator Commands

Use these commands to run the LED locator feature. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 86 LED Locator Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <code>led_locator on</code>                        | Enables the LED locator function. It will show the actual location of the WAC between several devices in the network. |
| <code>led_locator off</code>                       | Disables the LED locator function.  |
| <code>led_locator blink-timer &lt;1..60&gt;</code> | Sets a time interval between 1 and 60 minutes to stop the locator LED from blinking.                                  |
| <code>show led_locator status</code>               | Displays whether LED locator function is enabled and the timer setting.   |

### 26.4.1 LED Locator Commands Example

The following example turns on the LED locator feature and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# led_locator on
Router(config)# show led_locator status
Locator LED Status : ON
Locator LED Time : 10
```

# CHAPTER 27

## Antenna Switch

This chapter shows you how to adjust coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna.

### 27.1 Antenna Switch Overview

On the Zyxel Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch, you can adjust coverage depending on the antenna orientation for the Zyxel Device radios using the web configurator, the command line interface (CLI) or a physical switch.

Note: With the physical antenna switch, you apply the same antenna orientation settings to both radios. You can set the radios to have different settings while using the web configurator or the command line interface.

Note: The antenna switch is not available in every model. Please see [Section 1.2 on page 12](#), check the User's Guide or datasheet, or refer to the product page at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) to see if your Zyxel Device has an antenna switch.

### 27.2 Antenna Switch Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the antenna switch function. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 87 Antenna Switch Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>antenna config slot_name chain3 {ceiling   wall}</code> | <p>This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-radio basis.</p> <p>Adjusts coverage depending on each radio's antenna orientation for better coverage.</p>  |
| <code>[no] antenna sw-control enable</code>                   | <p>This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that has a physical antenna switch.</p> <p>Enables the adjustment of coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna for the Zyxel Device radios using the web configurator or the command line interface (CLI).</p> <p>Note: The antenna switch in the web configurator or CLI has priority over the physical antenna switch if you enable software control.</p> <p>The <code>no</code> command disables adjustment through the web configurator or the command line interface (CLI). You can still adjust coverage using a physical antenna switch.</p> |

Table 87 Antenna Switch Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>selectable-antenna config {ceiling<br/>  wall}</code> | This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis.<br><br>Adjusts coverage depending on the antenna orientation of the Zyxel Device radios for better coverage.                            |
| <code>show antenna status</code>                            | This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that has a physical antenna switch or allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis.<br><br>Displays whether software control of the antenna switch is enabled and the antenna orientation. |
| <code>show selectable-antenna status</code>                 | This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis.<br><br>Displays the antenna orientation.  |
| <code>show wlan all</code>                                  | Displays the antenna settings for all radios on the Zyxel Device.  |

## 27.2.1 Antenna Switch Commands Examples

The following example enables software control of the antenna switch and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# antenna sw-control enable
Router(config)# show antenna status
SW-Control: Enable
Radio 1: Ceiling
Radio 2: Ceiling

Router(config)#
```

The following example sets the antenna orientation to “ceiling” on a per-AP basis and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# selectable-antenna config ceiling
Router(config)# show selectable-antenna status
Selectable Antenna Status: Ceiling
Router(config)#
```

# CHAPTER 28

## Diagnostics

This chapter covers how to use the diagnostics feature.

### 28.1 Diagnostics Overview

The diagnostics feature provides an easy way for you to generate a file containing the Zyxel Device's configuration and diagnostic information. You may need to generate this file and send it to customer support during troubleshooting.

### 28.2 Diagnosis Commands

The following table lists the commands that you can use to have the Zyxel Device collect diagnostics information. Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 88 diagnosis Commands

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION  |
|--|--|
| <code>diag-info collect</code>   | Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.   |
| <code>diaginfo collect wtp</code>  | Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.   |
| <code>show diag-info</code>  | Displays the name, size, and creation date (in yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss format) of the diagnostic file.   |
| <code>show diaginfo collect wtp status</code>                              | Displays the status of diagnostic data collection. It also shows the name of the diagnostic file.  |
| <code>show tech-support</code><br><code>&lt;category&gt; [commands]</code> | Displays diagnostic information about the specified category of settings on the console when you access the CLI using SSH (Secure SHell) or a terminal emulation program on a computer connected to the Zyxel Device's console port. |

#### 28.2.1 Diagnosis Commands Examples

The following example creates a diagnostic file and displays its name, size, and creation date.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# diag-info collect
Please wait, collecting information
Router(config)# show diag-info
Filename   : diaginfo-20070423.tar.bz2
File size  : 1259 KB
Date       : 2007-04-23 09:55:09
```

The following example creates a diagnostic file and displays the status of data collection and its file name.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# diaginfo collect wtp
zysudo uid=0,euid=0
Please wait, collecting information
Router(config)# show diaginfo collect wtp status
Status: Collecting (29 %)
Filename : none
Router(config)#
```

# CHAPTER 29

## Maintenance Tools

Use the maintenance tool commands to check the conditions of other devices through the Zyxel Device. The maintenance tools can help you to troubleshoot network problems.

Here are maintenance tool commands that you can use in privilege mode.

Table 89 Maintenance Tools Commands in Privilege Mode

| COMMAND  | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---|
| <pre>packet-trace [interface <i>interface_name</i>] [ip- proto {&lt;0..255&gt;   <i>protocol_name</i>   any}] [src- host {<i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i>   any}] [dst-host {<i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i>   any}] [port {&lt;1..65535&gt;   any}] [file] [duration &lt;1..3600&gt;] [extension-filter <i>filter_extension</i>] traceroute {<i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i>}</pre> | <p>Sends traffic through the specified interface with the specified protocol, source address, destination address, and/or port number.</p> <p>If you specify file, the Zyxel Device dumps the traffic to /packet_trace/<br/>packet_trace_interface. Use FTP to retrieve the files (see <a href="#">Section 22.6 on page 133</a>).</p> <p>If you do not assign the duration, the Zyxel Device keeps dumping traffic until you use Ctrl-C.</p> <p>Use the extension filter to extend the use of this command.</p> <p><i>protocol_name</i>: You can use the name, instead of the number, for some IP protocols, such as tcp, udp, icmp, and so on. The names consist of 1-16 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). The first character cannot be a number.</p> <p><i>hostname</i>: You can use up to 252 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.). The first character cannot be a period.</p> <p><i>filter_extension</i>: You can use 1-256 alphanumeric characters, spaces, or '()+,/:=?!*#@\$_%.- characters.</p> |
| <pre>traceroute {<i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i>}</pre>  | <p>Displays the route taken by packets to the specified destination. Use Ctrl+c when you want to return to the prompt.</p>  |
| <pre>[no] packet-capture activate</pre>  | <p>Performs a packet capture that captures network traffic going through the set Zyxel Device's interface(s). Studying these packet captures may help you identify network problems.</p> <p>The no command stops the running packet capture on the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Note: Use the packet-capture<br/>configure command to configure the packet-capture settings before using this command.</p>  |

Table 89 Maintenance Tools Commands in Privilege Mode (continued)

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>packet-capture configure</code>   | Enters the sub-command mode.  |
| <code>duration &lt;0..300&gt;</code>  | Sets a time limit in seconds for the capture. The Zyxel Device stops the capture and generates the capture file when either this period of time has passed or the file reaches the size specified using the <code>files-size</code> command below. 0 means there is no time limit.  |
| <code>file-suffix &lt;profile_name&gt;</code>                                       | Specifies text to add to the end of the file name (before the dot and filename extension) to help you identify the packet capture files. Modifying the file suffix also avoids making new capture files that overwrite existing files of the same name.<br><br>The file name format is "interface name-file suffix.cap", for example "vlan2-packet-capture.cap".  |
| <code>files-size &lt;1..10000&gt;</code>  | Specify a maximum size limit in kilobytes for the total combined size of all the capture files on the Zyxel Device, including any existing capture files and any new capture files you generate.<br><br>The Zyxel Device stops the capture and generates the capture file when either the file reaches this size or the time period specified (using the <code>duration</code> command above) expires.<br><br>Note: If you have existing capture files you may need to set this size larger or delete existing capture files. |
| <code>host-ip {ip-address   profile_name   any}</code>                              | Sets a host IP address or a host IP address object for which to capture packets. any means to capture packets for all hosts.  |
| <code>host-port &lt;0..65535&gt;</code>   | If you set the IP Type to any, tcp, or udp using the <code>ip-type</code> command below, you can specify the port number of traffic to capture.   |
| <code>iface {add   del} {interface_name   virtual_interface_name}</code>            | Adds or deletes an interface or a virtual interface for which to capture packets to the capture interfaces list.  |
| <code>ip-type {icmp   igmp   igmp   pim   ah   esp   vrrp   udp   tcp   any}</code> | Sets the protocol of traffic for which to capture packets. any means to capture packets for all types of traffic.   |
| <code>snaplen &lt;68..1512&gt;</code>   | Specifies the maximum number of bytes to capture per packet. The Zyxel Device automatically truncates packets that exceed this size. As a result, when you view the packet capture files in a packet analyzer, the actual size of the packets may be larger than the size of captured packets.  |
| <code>show packet-capture status</code>   | Displays whether a packet capture is ongoing.   |
| <code>show packet-capture config</code>   | Displays current packet capture settings.   |

## 29.0.1 Command Examples

Some packet-trace command examples are shown below.

```
Router# packet-trace duration 3
tcpdump: listening on eth0
19:24:43.239798 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:43.240199 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply
19:24:44.258823 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:44.259219 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply
19:24:45.268839 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:45.269238 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply

6 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# packet-trace interface br0 ip-proto icmp file extension-filter and
src h
ost 192.168.105.133 and dst host 192.168.105.40 -s 500 -n
tcpdump: listening on br0
07:26:51.731558 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:52.742666 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:53.752774 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:54.762887 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# packet-trace interface br0 ip-proto icmp file extension-filter -s
500 -n
tcpdump: listening on br0
07:24:07.898639 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:24:07.900450 192.168.105.40 > 192.168.105.133: icmp: echo reply
07:24:08.908749 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:24:08.910606 192.168.105.40 > 192.168.105.133: icmp: echo reply

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# traceroute www.zyxel.com
traceroute to www.zyxel.com (203.160.232.7), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets
 1  172.23.37.254  3.049 ms  1.947 ms  1.979 ms
 2  172.23.6.253  2.983 ms  2.961 ms  2.980 ms
 3  172.23.6.1  5.991 ms  5.968 ms  6.984 ms
 4  * * *
```

Here are maintenance tool commands that you can use in configure mode.

Table 90 Maintenance Tools Commands in Configuration Mode

| COMMAND                         | DESCRIPTION   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code>show arp-table</code>     | Displays the current Address Resolution Protocol table. |
| <code>arp IP mac_address</code> | Edits or creates an ARP table entry.                    |
| <code>no arp ip</code>          | Removes an ARP table entry.                             |

The following example creates an ARP table entry for IP address 192.168.1.10 and MAC address 01:02:03:04:05:06. Then it shows the ARP table and finally removes the new entry.

```
Router# arp 192.168.1.10 01:02:03:04:05:06
Router# show arp-table
Address                HWtype  HWaddress           Flags Mask            Iface
192.168.1.10           ether    01:02:03:04:05:06   CM                    lan
192.168.1.254          ether    00:04:80:9B:78:00   C                     lan
Router# no arp 192.168.1.10
Router# show arp-table
Address                HWtype  HWaddress           Flags Mask            Iface
192.168.1.10           (incomplete)
192.168.1.254          ether    00:04:80:9B:78:00   C                     lan
```

### 29.0.1.1 Packet Capture Command Example

The following examples show how to configure packet capture settings and perform a packet capture. First you have to check whether a packet capture is running. This example shows no other packet capture is running. Then you can also check the current packet capture settings.

```
Router(config)# show packet-capture status
capture status: off
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show packet-capture config
iface: lan
ip-version: any
proto-type: any
host-port: 0
host-ip: any
file-suffix: lan-packet-capture
snaplen: 1500
duration: 0
file-size: 1000
```

Exit the sub-command mode and have the Zyxel Device capture packets according to the settings you just configured.

```
Router(packet-capture)# exit
Router(config)# packet-capture activate
Router(config)#
```

Manually stop the running packet capturing.

```
Router(config)# no packet-capture activate
Router(config)#
```

Check current packet capture status and list all packet captures the Zyxel Device has performed.

```
Router(config)# show packet-capture status
capture status: off
Router(config)# dir /packet_trace
File Name                                     Size      Modified Time
=====
lan-packet-capture.cap                      575160    2009-11-24 09:06:59
Router(config)#
```

You can use FTP to download a capture file. Open and study it using a packet analyzer tool (for example, Ethereal or Wireshark).

# CHAPTER 30

## Watchdog Timer

This chapter provides information about the Zyxel Device's watchdog timers.

### 30.1 Hardware Watchdog Timer

The hardware watchdog has the system restart if the hardware fails.

**The `hardware-watchdog-timer` commands are for support engineers. It is recommended that you not modify the hardware watchdog timer settings.**

Table 91 hardware-watchdog-timer Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>[no] hardware-watchdog-timer &lt;4..37&gt;</code> | Sets how long the system's hardware can be unresponsive before resetting. The <code>no</code> command turns the timer off. |
| <code>show hardware-watchdog-timer status</code>        | Displays the settings of the hardware watchdog timer.  |

### 30.2 Software Watchdog Timer

The software watchdog has the system restart if the core firmware fails.

**The `software-watchdog-timer` commands are for support engineers. It is recommended that you not modify the software watchdog timer settings.**

Table 92 software-watchdog-timer Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|---|
| <code>[no] software-watchdog-timer &lt;10..600&gt;</code> | Sets how long the system's core firmware can be unresponsive before resetting. The <code>no</code> command turns the timer off. |
| <code>show software-watchdog-timer status</code>          | Displays the settings of the software watchdog timer.   |
| <code>show software-watchdog-timer log</code>             | Displays a log of when the software watchdog timer took effect.   |

## 30.3 Application Watchdog

The application watchdog has the system restart a process that fails. These are the `app-watchdog` commands. Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 93 `app-watchdog` Commands

| COMMAND   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog activate</code>  | Turns the application watchdog timer on or off.  |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog console-print {always once}</code>                                     | Display debug messages on the console (every time they occur or once). The <code>no</code> command changes the setting back to the default.  |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog interval &lt;5..60&gt;</code>  | Sets how frequently (in seconds) the Zyxel Device checks the system processes. The <code>no</code> command changes the setting back to the default.  |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog retry-count &lt;1..5&gt;</code>  | Set how many times the Zyxel Device is to re-check a process before considering it failed. The <code>no</code> command changes the setting back to the default.  |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog alert</code>   | Has the Zyxel Device send an alert the user when the system is out of memory or disk space.  |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog disk-threshold min &lt;1..100&gt; max &lt;1..100&gt;</code>            | Sets the percentage thresholds for sending a disk usage alert. The Zyxel Device starts sending alerts when disk usage exceeds the maximum (the second threshold you enter). The Zyxel Device stops sending alerts when the disk usage drops back below the minimum threshold (the first threshold you enter). The <code>no</code> command changes the setting back to the default.       |
| <code>[no] app-watch-dog mem-threshold min <i>threshold_min</i> max <i>threshold_max</i></code> | Sets the percentage thresholds for sending a memory usage alert. The Zyxel Device starts sending alerts when memory usage exceeds the maximum (the second threshold you enter). The Zyxel Device stops sending alerts when the memory usage drops back below the minimum threshold (the first threshold you enter). The <code>no</code> command changes the setting back to the default. |
| <code>show app-watch-dog config</code>  | Displays the application watchdog timer settings.  |
| <code>show app-watch-dog monitor-list</code>  | Display the list of applications that the application watchdog is monitoring.  |

### 30.3.1 Application Watchdog Commands Example

The following example displays the application watchdog configuration and lists the processes that the application watchdog is monitoring.

```
Router(config)# show app-watch-dog monitor-list
#app_name          min_process_count      max_process_count(negative integer
means unlimited)
uamd                1                      -1
policyd             1                      -1
classify            1                      -1
resd                1                      -1
zyshd_wd            1                      -1
zylogd              1                      -1
syslog-ng           1                      -1
zylogger            1                      -1
ddns_had            1                      -1
wdtd                1                      -1
link_updown         1                      -1
fauthd              1                      -1
signal_wrapper      1                      -1
capwap_srv          1                      1
capwap_client       1                      -1
Router(config)#
```

# List of Commands (Alphabetical)

This section lists the commands and sub-commands in alphabetical order. Commands and subcommands appear at the same level.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| [no] aaa authentication { <i>profile-name</i> } local .....  | 123 |
| [no] aaa authentication default <i>member1</i> [ <i>member2</i> ] [ <i>member3</i> ] [ <i>member4</i> ] .....  | 124 |
| [no] aaa authentication <i>profile-name</i> .....  | 123 |
| [no] aaa authentication <i>profile-name member1</i> [ <i>member2</i> ] [ <i>member3</i> ] [ <i>member4</i> ] .....   | 124 |
| [no] aaa group server ad <i>group-name</i> .....   | 118 |
| [no] aaa group server ldap <i>group-name</i> .....   | 120 |
| [no] aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i> .....   | 121 |
| [no] accounting interim-interval <1..1440> .....   | 84  |
| [no] accounting interim-update .....   | 84  |
| [no] activate .....  | 150 |
| [no] activate .....  | 153 |
| [no] activate .....  | 60  |
| [no] activate .....  | 72  |
| [no] activate .....  | 92  |
| [no] ampdu .....   | 72  |
| [no] amsdu .....   | 72  |
| [no] antenna sw-control enable .....   | 158 |
| [no] ap-mode detection activate .....  | 92  |
| [no] app-watch-dog activate .....  | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog alert .....   | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog console-print {always once} .....   | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog disk-threshold min <1..100> max <1..100> .....  | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog interval <5..60> .....  | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog mem-threshold min <i>threshold_min</i> max <i>threshold_max</i> .....   | 168 |
| [no] app-watch-dog retry-count <1..5> .....  | 168 |
| [no] block-ack .....   | 73  |
| [no] block-intra .....   | 80  |
| [no] broadcast .....   | 49  |
| [no] clock daylight-saving .....   | 107 |
| [no] clock saving-interval begin {apr aug dec feb jan jul jun mar may nov oct sep}<br>{1 2 3 4 last} {fri mon sat sun thu tue wed} <i>hh:mm</i> end<br>{apr aug dec feb jan jul jun mar may nov oct sep} {1 2 3 4 last}<br>{fri mon sat sun thu tue wed} <i>hh:mm</i> offset ..... | 108 |
| [no] clock time-zone {- + <i>hh:mm</i> } .....   | 108 |
| [no] connectivity-check continuous-log activate .....  | 143 |
| [no] console baud <i>baud_rate</i> .....   | 108 |
| [no] ctsrts <0..2347> .....  | 73  |
| [no] description <i>description</i> .....  | 43  |
| [no] disable-bss-color .....   | 73  |
| [no] disable-dfs-switch .....  | 75  |
| [no] domainname < <i>domain_name</i> > .....   | 106 |
| [no] dot11k-v activate .....   | 80  |
| [no] dot11n-disable-coexistence .....  | 75  |
| [no] dot11r activate .....   | 84  |
| [no] dot11r ft-over-ds activate .....  | 84  |
| [no] dot11w .....  | 84  |
| [no] dot1x-eap .....   | 84  |
| [no] downstream <0..1048576> .....   | 43  |
| [no] duplex <full   half> .....  | 47  |
| [no] frag <256..2346> .....  | 75  |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| [no] frame-capture activate .....  | 96  |
| [no] hardware-watchdog-timer <4..37> .....   | 167 |
| [no] hide .....  | 80  |
| [no] hostname <hostname> .....   | 106 |
| [no] httpprotect .....   | 75  |
| [no] ignore-country-ie .....   | 75  |
| [no] interface <i>interface_name</i> .....   | 43  |
| [no] ip address dhcp .....   | 43  |
| [no] ip address <i>ip subnet_mask</i> .....  | 43  |
| [no] ip dns server a-record <i>fqdn w.x.y.z</i> .....  | 109 |
| [no] ip dns server mx-record <i>domain_name {w.x.y.z fqdn}</i> .....   | 109 |
| [no] ip ftp server .....   | 114 |
| [no] ip ftp server cert <i>certificate_name</i> .....  | 114 |
| [no] ip ftp server port <1..65535> .....   | 114 |
| [no] ip ftp server tls-required .....  | 114 |
| [no] ip gateway <i>ip</i> .....  | 44  |
| [no] ip http authentication <i>auth_method</i> .....   | 111 |
| [no] ip http port <1..65535> .....   | 111 |
| [no] ip http secure-port <1..65535> .....  | 111 |
| [no] ip http secure-server .....   | 112 |
| [no] ip http secure-server auth-client .....   | 112 |
| [no] ip http secure-server cert <i>certificate_name</i> .....  | 112 |
| [no] ip http secure-server force-redirect .....  | 112 |
| [no] ip http server .....  | 112 |
| [no] ip ssh server .....   | 113 |
| [no] ip ssh server cert <i>certificate_name</i> .....  | 113 |
| [no] ip ssh server port <1..65535> .....   | 113 |
| [no] ip ssh server v1 .....  | 113 |
| [no] item ap-sta .....   | 151 |
| [no] item ap-traffic .....   | 151 |
| [no] item cpu-usage .....  | 151 |
| [no] item mem-usage .....  | 151 |
| [no] item port-usage .....   | 151 |
| [no] item station-count .....  | 151 |
| [no] item wtp-rx .....   | 151 |
| [no] item wtp-tx .....   | 151 |
| [no] l2isolation <i>l2_isolation_profile</i> .....   | 80  |
| [no] load-balancing activate .....   | 99  |
| [no] load-balancing kickout .....  | 98  |
| [no] logging console .....   | 147 |
| [no] logging console category <i>module_name</i> .....   | 147 |
| [no] logging debug suppression .....   | 144 |
| [no] logging debug suppression interval <10..600> .....  | 144 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> .....   | 145 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> {send-log-to   send-alerts-to} <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 146 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> address { <i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i> } .....   | 145 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> authentication .....  | 145 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> authentication username <i>username</i> password <i>password</i> .....                    | 146 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> category <i>module_name</i> level {alert   all} .....                                     | 146 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> schedule {full   hourly} .....  | 146 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> subject <i>subject</i> .....  | 146 |
| [no] logging mail <1..2> subject-appending {date-time   system-name} .....   | 146 |
| [no] logging syslog <1..4> .....   | 145 |
| [no] logging syslog <1..4> {disable   level normal   level all} .....  | 145 |
| [no] logging syslog <1..4> address { <i>ip</i>   <i>hostname</i> } .....   | 145 |
| [no] logging syslog <1..4> facility {local_1   local_2   local_3   local_4   local_5   local_6<br>  local_7} ..... | 145 |
| [no] logging syslog <1..4> format {cef   vrpt} .....   | 145 |
| [no] logging system-log suppression .....  | 143 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| [no] logging system-log suppression interval <10..600> .....    | 143 |
| [no] mac_addr [description description] .....                   | 88  |
| [no] mac_address .....  | 89  |
| [no] mac-auth activate .....                                    | 85  |
| [no] macfilter mac_filter_profile .....                         | 81  |
| [no] mail-subject append date-time .....                        | 151 |
| [no] mail-subject append system-name .....                      | 151 |
| [no] metric <0..15> .....                                       | 44  |
| [no] mss <536..1460> .....                                      | 44  |
| [no] mtu <576..1500> .....                                      | 44  |
| [no] multicast .....  | 49  |
| [no] multicast-to-unicast .....                                 | 76  |
| [no] negotiation auto .....                                     | 47  |
| [no] netconf inactivate .....                                   | 51  |
| [no] netconf proxy .....  | 51  |
| [no] netconf proxy-auth .....                                   | 51  |
| [no] nol-channel-block .....                                    | 76  |
| [no] ntp .....  | 108 |
| [no] ntp server {fqdn w.x.y.z} .....                            | 108 |
| [no] override-full-power activate .....                         | 110 |
| [no] packet-capture activate .....                              | 162 |
| [no] password complexity-verify .....                           | 56  |
| [no] private-encryption-key {encryption_key} .....              | 132 |
| [no] proxy-arp .....  | 81  |
| [no] radius-attr nas-id string .....                            | 85  |
| [no] radius-attr nas-ip ipv4_address .....                      | 86  |
| [no] radius-server host radius_server auth-port auth_port ..... | 117 |
| [no] radius-server key secret .....                             | 118 |
| [no] radius-server timeout time .....                           | 118 |
| [no] reauth <30..30000> .....                                   | 86  |
| [no] reboot-time <hh:mm> .....                                  | 154 |
| [no] reject-legacy-station .....                                | 76  |
| [no] report .....   | 149 |
| [no] reset-counter .....  | 152 |
| [no] roaming group group_name .....                             | 107 |
| [no] rogue-rule {hidden-ssid ssid-keyword weak-security} .....  | 92  |
| [no] rogue-rule keyword <ssid> .....                            | 92  |
| [no] rssi-retry .....   | 77  |
| [no] rssi-thres .....   | 76  |
| [no] server alternative-cn-identifier uid .....                 | 118 |
| [no] server alternative-cn-identifier uid .....                 | 120 |
| [no] server basedn basedn .....                                 | 118 |
| [no] server basedn basedn .....                                 | 120 |
| [no] server binddn binddn .....                                 | 118 |
| [no] server binddn binddn .....                                 | 120 |
| [no] server cn-identifier uid .....                             | 119 |
| [no] server cn-identifier uid .....                             | 120 |
| [no] server description description .....                       | 119 |
| [no] server description description .....                       | 120 |
| [no] server description description .....                       | 121 |
| [no] server domain-auth activate .....                          | 119 |
| [no] server group-attribute <1-255> .....                       | 121 |
| [no] server group-attribute group-attribute .....               | 119 |
| [no] server group-attribute group-attribute .....               | 120 |
| [no] server host ad_server .....                                | 119 |
| [no] server host ldap_server .....                              | 120 |
| [no] server host radius_server .....                            | 121 |
| [no] server key secret .....                                    | 121 |
| [no] server password password .....                             | 119 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| [no] server password <i>password</i> .....  | 120 |
| [no] server port <i>port_no</i> .....   | 119 |
| [no] server port <i>port_no</i> .....   | 120 |
| [no] server search-time-limit <i>time</i> .....   | 119 |
| [no] server search-time-limit <i>time</i> .....   | 120 |
| [no] server ssl .....   | 119 |
| [no] server ssl .....   | 120 |
| [no] server timeout <i>time</i> .....   | 121 |
| [no] server-acct <1..2> activate .....  | 83  |
| [no] server-auth <1..2> activate .....  | 85  |
| [no] shutdown .....   | 44  |
| [no] smtp-auth activate .....   | 150 |
| [no] smtp-tls activate .....  | 152 |
| [no] snmp-server .....  | 115 |
| [no] snmp-server community <i>community_string</i> {ro rw} .....                                | 116 |
| [no] snmp-server contact <i>description</i> .....   | 116 |
| [no] snmp-server enable {informs traps} .....   | 116 |
| [no] snmp-server enable traps {wireless capwap} .....   | 115 |
| [no] snmp-server host { <i>fqdn</i>   <i>w.x.y.z</i> } [ <i>community_string</i> ] .....        | 115 |
| [no] snmp-server location <i>description</i> .....  | 116 |
| [no] snmp-server port <1..65535> .....  | 116 |
| [no] snmp-server version <v2c v3> .....   | 115 |
| [no] software-watchdog-timer <10..600> .....  | 167 |
| [no] speed <10, 100, 1000, 2500, 5000, 10000> .....   | 47  |
| [no] ssid-schedule .....  | 81  |
| [no] transition-mode .....  | 86  |
| [no] uapds .....  | 81  |
| [no] upstream <0..1048576> .....  | 44  |
| [no] users lockout-period <1..65535> .....  | 56  |
| [no] users retry-count <1..99> .....  | 56  |
| [no] users retry-limit .....  | 56  |
| [no] users simultaneous-logon {administration   access} enforce .....                           | 56  |
| [no] users simultaneous-logon {administration   access} limit <1..1024> .....                   | 56  |
| [no] vlanid <1..4094> .....   | 61  |
| [no] vlan-id <1..4094> .....  | 81  |
| [no] wlan-l2isolation-profile <i>l2isolation_profile_name</i> .....                             | 89  |
| [no] wlan-macfilter-profile <i>macfilter_profile_name</i> .....                                 | 88  |
| [no] wlan-radio-profile <i>radio_profile_name</i> .....   | 71  |
| [no] wlan-security-profile <i>security_profile_name</i> .....                                   | 83  |
| [no] wlan-ssid-profile <i>ssid_profile_name</i> .....   | 80  |
| [no] wlan-wds-profile <i>wds_profile_name</i> .....   | 90  |
| [no] wpa2-preauth .....   | 87  |
| [no] wtp-logging console .....  | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging console category <i>module_name</i> level <i>pri</i> .....                     | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging debug suppression .....  | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging debug suppression interval <10..600> .....                                     | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging mail <i>mail_range</i> category <i>module_name</i> level {alert   all} .....   | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging syslog <i>syslog_range</i> category <i>module_name</i> disable .....           | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging syslog <i>syslog_range</i> category <i>module_name</i> level {normal   all} .. | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging system-log category <i>module_name</i> disable .....                           | 148 |
| [no] wtp-logging system-log category <i>module_name</i> level {normal   all } .....             | 148 |
| {downlink-rate-limit   uplink-rate-limit} <i>data_rate</i> .....                                | 80  |
| {mon tue wed thu fri sat sun} {enable   disable} <hh:mm> <hh:mm> .....                          | 81  |
| [no] <sun  mon  tue  wed  thu  fri  sat> .....  | 154 |
| 2g-channel <i>wireless_channel_2g</i> .....   | 71  |
| 2g-multicast-speed <i>wlan_2g_support_speed</i> .....   | 71  |
| 2g-wlan-rate-control <i>rate_2g</i> .....   | 71  |
| 5g-channel <i>wireless_channel_5g</i> .....   | 71  |
| 5g-multicast-speed <i>wlan_5g_basic_speed</i> .....   | 71  |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5g-wlan-rate-control rate_5g .....   | 72  |
| 6g-channel wireless_channel_6g .....   | 72  |
| 6g-multicast-speed wlan_6g_basic_speed .....   | 72  |
| 6g-wlan-rate-control rate_6g .....   | 72  |
| aaa authentication rename profile-name-old profile-name-new .....  | 123 |
| aaa group server ad group-name .....   | 118 |
| aaa group server ad rename group-name group-name .....   | 118 |
| aaa group server ldap group-name .....   | 120 |
| aaa group server ldap rename group-name group-name .....   | 120 |
| aaa group server radius group-name .....   | 121 |
| aaa group server radius rename {group-name-old} group-name-new .....   | 121 |
| antenna config slot_name chain3 {ceiling   wall} .....   | 158 |
| ap profile radio_profile_name .....  | 60  |
| apply .....  | 33  |
| apply /conf/file_name.conf [ignore-error] [rollback] .....   | 131 |
| apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error .....  | 128 |
| apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error rollback .....   | 128 |
| arp IP mac_address .....   | 165 |
| atse .....   | 33  |
| band {2.4G 5G 6G} .....  | 80  |
| band wlan_band band-mode wlan_band_mode .....  | 72  |
| beacon-interval <40..1000> .....   | 73  |
| ble slot_name .....  | 102 |
| broadcast pps <1..10000> .....   | 49  |
| bss-color <0..63> .....  | 73  |
| ca enroll cmp name certificate_name cn-type {ip cn cn_address fqdn cn cn_domain_name mail cn<br>cn_email} [ou organizational_unit] [o organization] [c country] key-type {rsa dsa} key-<br>len key_length num <0..99999999> password password ca ca_name url url; ....   | 104 |
| ca enroll scep name certificate_name cn-type {ip cn cn_address fqdn cn cn_domain_name mail cn<br>cn_email} [ou organizational_unit] [o organization] [c country] key-type {rsa dsa}<br>key-len key_length password password ca ca_name url url .....   | 104 |
| ca generate pkcs10 name certificate_name cn-type {ip cn cn_address fqdn cn cn_domain_name mail<br>cn cn_email} [ou organizational_unit] [o organization] [c country] key-type {rsa rsa-<br>sha256 rsa-sha512 dsa dsa-sha256} key-len key_length [extend-key {svr-client-ike  svr-<br>client svr-ike svr client-ike client  ike}] ..... | 104 |
| ca generate pkcs12 name name password password .....   | 105 |
| ca generate x509 name certificate_name cn-type {ip cn cn_address fqdn cn cn_domain_name mail<br>cn cn_email} [ou organizational_unit] [o organization] [c country] key-type {rsa rsa-<br>sha256 rsa-sha512 dsa dsa-sha256} key-len key_length [extend-key {svr-client-ike  svr-<br>client svr-ike svr client-ike client  ike}] .....   | 105 |
| ca rename category {local remote} old_name new_name .....  | 105 |
| ca validation remote_certificate .....   | 105 |
| capwap ap ac-ip {primary ip secondary ip   auto} .....   | 67  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ip gateway ip .....  | 67  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 address ipv6_addr/prefix .....  | 67  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request   client} .....  | 67  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object dhcp6_profile .....  | 68  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable .....  | 68  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway ipv6_addr .....   | 68  |
| capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept .....  | 68  |
| capwap ap vlan ip address {ip subnet_mask   dhcp} .....  | 67  |
| capwap ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> [tag   untag] .....   | 68  |
| capwap ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> <tag untag> .....   | 43  |
| ch-width <20/ 20/40/ 20/40/80/ 20/40/80/160/ 240/ 320> .....   | 72  |
| clear .....  | 33  |
| clear aaa authentication profile-name .....  | 123 |
| clear aaa group server ad [group-name] .....   | 118 |
| clear aaa group server ldap [group-name] .....   | 119 |
| clear aaa group server radius group-name .....   | 121 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| clear logging debug buffer .....  | 144 |
| clear logging system-log buffer .....   | 143 |
| clear report [interface_name] .....   | 149 |
| clear wtp-logging log-buffer MAC .....  | 148 |
| clock date <yyyy-mm-dd> time <hh:mm:ss> .....   | 107 |
| clock time hh:mm:ss .....   | 108 |
| cloud-firmware check .....  | 132 |
| cloud-firmware upgrade .....  | 132 |
| cloud-firmware upgrade abort .....  | 132 |
| configure .....   | 33  |
| copy .....  | 33  |
| copy {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}file_name-a.conf {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/file_name-b.conf ..... | 131 |
| copy running-config /conf/file_name.conf .....  | 131 |
| copy running-config startup-config .....  | 131 |
| daily-report .....  | 150 |
| daily-report .....  | 33  |
| dcs 2g-selected-channel 2.4g_channels .....   | 74  |
| dcs 5g-selected-channel 5g_channels .....   | 74  |
| dcs 6g-selected-channel 6g_channels .....   | 74  |
| dcs channel-deployment {3-channel 4-channel} .....  | 74  |
| dcs client-aware {enable disable} .....   | 73  |
| dcs dcs-2g-method {auto manual} .....   | 74  |
| dcs dcs-5g-method {auto manual} .....   | 74  |
| dcs dcs-6g-method {auto manual} .....   | 74  |
| dcs dfs-aware {enable disable} .....  | 74  |
| dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-ch-util <0-100> .....  | 75  |
| dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-rssi <-20...-105> .....  | 75  |
| dcs mode {interval schedule} .....  | 75  |
| dcs now .....   | 97  |
| dcs rand-backoff .....  | 97  |
| dcs schedule <hh:mm> {mon tue wed thu fri sat sun} .....  | 75  |
| dcs sensitivity-level {high medium  low} .....  | 73  |
| dcs time-interval interval .....  | 73  |
| debug (*) .....   | 33  |
| debug [cmdexec corefile ip  kernel mac-id-rewrite observer switch  system zyinetpkt] (*)  | 35  |
| debug app show l7protocol (*) .....   | 35  |
| debug ca (*) .....  | 35  |
| debug device-ha (*) .....   | 35  |
| debug gui (*) .....   | 35  |
| debug hardware (*) .....  | 35  |
| debug interface .....   | 35  |
| debug interface ifconfig .....  | 35  |
| debug ip dns .....  | 35  |
| debug logging .....   | 35  |
| debug manufacture .....   | 35  |
| debug network arpignore (*) .....   | 35  |
| debug policy-route (*) .....  | 35  |
| delete .....  | 33  |
| delete {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/file_name .....  | 131 |
| description description .....   | 75  |
| description description .....   | 80  |
| description description .....   | 84  |
| description description .....   | 89  |
| details .....   | 33  |
| detect interval <10..1440> .....  | 92  |
| diag .....  | 33  |
| diag-info .....   | 33  |
| diag-info collect .....   | 160 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| diaginfo collect wtp .....  | 160 |
| dir .....   | 33  |
| dir {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp} .....   | 131 |
| disable .....   | 33  |
| dot11w-op <1..2> .....  | 84  |
| dtim-period <1..255> .....  | 75  |
| duration <0..300> .....   | 163 |
| eap {external   internal auth_method} .....   | 85  |
| enable .....  | 34  |
| exit .....  | 34  |
| exit .....  | 43  |
| exit .....  | 47  |
| exit .....  | 61  |
| exit .....  | 77  |
| exit .....  | 80  |
| exit .....  | 87  |
| exit .....  | 88  |
| exit .....  | 89  |
| exit .....  | 90  |
| exit .....  | 92  |
| exit .....  | 96  |
| file-prefix file_name .....   | 96  |
| files-size <1..10000> .....   | 163 |
| files-size mon_file_size .....  | 96  |
| file-suffix <profile_name> .....  | 163 |
| filter-action {allow   deny} .....  | 88  |
| frame-capture configure .....   | 96  |
| friendly-ap ap_mac description2 .....   | 92  |
| group-key <30..30000> .....   | 85  |
| guard-interval wlan_htgi .....  | 75  |
| host-ip {ip_address   profile_name   any} .....   | 163 |
| host-port <0..65535> .....  | 163 |
| htm .....   | 34  |
| hybrid-mode [managed   standalone] .....  | 68  |
| ibeacon index <1..5> activate .....   | 102 |
| ibeacon index <1..5> no activate .....  | 102 |
| ibeacon index <1..5> uuid uuid major <0..65535> minor <0..65535> .....  | 102 |
| idle <30..30000> .....  | 85  |
| iface {add   del} {interface_name   virtual_interface_name} .....   | 163 |
| interface .....   | 34  |
| interface send statistics interval <15..3600> .....   | 43  |
| interface-name {bridge_interface} user_defined_name .....   | 43  |
| interface-rename old_user_defined_name new_user_defined_name .....  | 43  |
| ip dns server cache-flush .....   | 109 |
| ip dns server rule {<1..32> append insert <1..32>} access-group {ALL profile_name} zone<br>{ALL profile_name} action {accept deny} .....                      | 109 |
| ip dns server rule move <1..32> to <1..32> .....  | 109 |
| ip dns server zone-forwarder {<1..32> append insert <1..32>} {domain_zone_name *} user-defined<br>w.x.y.z [private   interface {interface_name   auto}] ..... | 109 |
| ip dns server zone-forwarder move <1..32> to <1..32> .....  | 109 |
| ip gateway ip metric <0..15> .....  | 44  |
| ip http secure-server cipher-suite {cipher_algorithm} [cipher_algorithm] [cipher_algorithm]<br>[cipher_algorithm] .....                                       | 112 |
| ip-type {icmp   igmp   igmp   pim   ah   esp   vrrp   udp   tcp   any} .....  | 163 |
| led_locator blink-timer <1..60> .....   | 157 |
| led_locator off .....   | 157 |
| led_locator on .....  | 157 |
| led_suppress disable .....  | 156 |
| led_suppress enable .....   | 156 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| limit-ampdu < 100..65535> .....  | 76  |
| limit-amsdu <2290..4096> .....   | 76  |
| load-balancing alpha <1..255> .....  | 99  |
| load-balancing beta <1..255> .....   | 99  |
| load-balancing kickInterval <1..255> .....   | 99  |
| load-balancing liInterval <1..255> .....   | 99  |
| load-balancing max sta <1..127> .....  | 98  |
| load-balancing mode {station   traffic   smart-classroom} .....  | 98  |
| load-balancing sigma <51..100> .....   | 99  |
| load-balancing timeout <1..255> .....  | 99  |
| load-balancing traffic level {high   low   medium} .....   | 98  |
| logging console category <i>module_name</i> level {alert   crit   debug   emerg   error   info   notice<br>  warn} ..... | 147 |
| logging mail <1..2> schedule daily hour <0..23> minute <0..59> .....   | 146 |
| logging mail <1..2> schedule weekly day <i>day</i> hour <0..23> minute <0..59> .....                                     | 146 |
| logging mail <1..2> sending_now .....  | 145 |
| logging system-log category <i>module_name</i> {disable   level normal   level all} ....                                 | 143 |
| mac-auth auth-method <i>auth_method</i> .....  | 85  |
| mac-auth case account {upper / lower} .....  | 85  |
| mac-auth case calling-station-id {upper / lower} .....   | 85  |
| mac-auth delimiter account {colon / dash / none} .....   | 85  |
| mac-auth delimiter calling-station-id {colon / dash / none} .....  | 85  |
| mail-from <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-subject set <i>subject</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-to-1 <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-to-2 <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-to-3 <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-to-4 <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| mail-to-5 <i>e_mail</i> .....  | 151 |
| manager ap vlan [no] ip gateway <i>ipv4_address</i> .....  | 45  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 address <i>ipv6_address/prefix</i> .....   | 44  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request   client} .....   | 44  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object <i>dhcp6_profile</i> .....  | 45  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable .....   | 45  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway <i>ipv6_address</i> .....  | 45  |
| manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept .....   | 45  |
| manager ap vlan ip address { <i>ipv4_address subnet_mask</i>   dhcp} .....   | 44  |
| manager ap vlan ip dns <i>ipv4_address</i> .....   | 45  |
| manager ap vlan no ip dns .....  | 45  |
| manager ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> {tag   untag} .....  | 44  |
| mode {none   enhanced-open   wep   wpa2   wpa2-mix   wpa3} .....   | 85  |
| multicast pps <1..10000> .....   | 49  |
| netconf proxy port <1..65535> .....  | 51  |
| netconf proxy server { <i>ip host_name</i> } .....   | 51  |
| netconf proxy-auth username <i>username</i> {password encrypted-password} {password ciphertext} 51                       |     |
| no arp <i>ip</i> .....   | 165 |
| no ca category {local remote} <i>certificate_name</i> .....  | 105 |
| no ca validation <i>name</i> .....   | 105 |
| no friendly-ap <i>ap_mac</i> .....   | 92  |
| no ip dns server rule <1..32> .....  | 109 |
| no ip http secure-server cipher-suite { <i>cipher_algorithm</i> } .....  | 112 |
| no mail-subject set .....  | 151 |
| no packet-trace .....  | 34  |
| no port <1..x> .....   | 47  |
| no rogue-ap <i>ap_mac</i> .....  | 92  |
| no server-auth <1..2> .....  | 86  |
| no smtp-address .....  | 151 |
| no smtp-auth username .....  | 151 |
| no smtp-port .....   | 151 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| no snmp-server v3user username <username> .....   | 115 |
| no storm-control ethernet .....   | 49  |
| no username username .....  | 54  |
| nslookup .....  | 34  |
| ntp sync .....  | 108 |
| output-power <0..30> .....  | 60  |
| packet-capture configure .....  | 163 |
| packet-trace .....  | 34  |
| packet-trace [interface interface_name] [ip-proto {<0..255>   protocol_name   any}] [src-host {ip   hostname   any}] [dst-host {ip   hostname   any}] [port {<1..65535>   any}] [file] [duration <1..3600>] [extension-filter filter_extension] .....                                 | 162 |
| ping .....  | 34  |
| port status port_name .....   | 47  |
| psk psk .....   | 90  |
| psm .....   | 34  |
| qos wlan_qos_category .....   | 81  |
| reboot .....  | 153 |
| reboot .....  | 34  |
| release .....   | 34  |
| rename .....  | 34  |
| rename {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/old-file_name {/cert   /conf   /idp   /packet_trace   /script   /tmp}/new-file_name .....  | 132 |
| rename /script/old-file_name /script/new-file_name .....  | 132 |
| renew .....   | 34  |
| repeater profile radio_profile_name .....   | 60  |
| reset-counter-now .....   | 152 |
| rogue-ap ap_mac description2 .....  | 92  |
| rogue-ap detection .....  | 92  |
| role {ap} .....   | 76  |
| rootap profile radio_profile_name .....   | 60  |
| rssidbm <-20..-105> .....   | 76  |
| rssidcheckinterval <0..60> .....  | 77  |
| rssidchecklvl {high standard low} .....   | 77  |
| rssidcheckpktnum <0..65535> .....   | 77  |
| rssidinterval <1..86400> .....  | 77  |
| rssikickout <-20..-105> .....   | 76  |
| rssiretrycount <1~100> .....  | 77  |
| run .....   | 34  |
| run /script/file_name.zysh .....  | 132 |
| rx-mask chain_mask .....  | 77  |
| schedule hour <0..23> minute <00..59> .....   | 152 |
| schedule-reboot .....   | 153 |
| security security_profile .....   | 81  |
| selectable-antenna config {ceiling   wall} .....  | 159 |
| send-now .....  | 152 |
| server domain-auth realm [realm] .....  | 119 |
| server domain-auth username [username] password [password] .....  | 119 |
| server-acct <1..2> {host address host_name   ip address ipv4_address} port <1..65535> secret secret .....   | 84  |
| server-auth <1..2> {host address host_name   ip address ipv4_address} port <1..65535> secret secret .....   | 86  |
| session timeout { tcp-close <1..300>   tcp-closewait <1..300>   tcp-established <1..432000>   tcp-finwait <1..300>   tcp-lastack <1..300>   tcp-synrecv <1..300>   tcp-synsent <1..300>   tcp-timewait <1..300>   udp-connect <1..300>   ucp-deliver <1..300>   icmp <1..300> } ..... | 155 |
| session timeout {udp-connect <1..300>   udp-deliver <1..300>   icmp <1..300>} ...   | 155 |
| setenv .....  | 34  |
| setenv stop-on-error {on   off} .....   | 132 |
| setenv stop-on-error off .....  | 128 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| setenv-startup stop-on-error {on   off}                                   | 132 |
| setenv-startup stop-on-error off  | 128 |
| show  | 34  |
| show aaa authentication {group-name default}                              | 123 |
| show aaa group server ad group-name                                       | 118 |
| show aaa group server ldap group-name                                     | 119 |
| show aaa group server radius group-name                                   | 121 |
| show antenna status   | 159 |
| show app-watch-dog config   | 168 |
| show app-watch-dog monitor-list   | 168 |
| show arp-table  | 165 |
| show ble advertising  | 102 |
| show ble status   | 102 |
| show ble uuid-gen   | 102 |
| show boot status  | 37  |
| show ca category {local remote} [name certificate_name format {text pem}] | 105 |
| show ca category {local remote} name certificate_name certpath            | 105 |
| show ca spaceusage  | 105 |
| show ca validation name name  | 105 |
| show capwap ap ac-ip  | 68  |
| show capwap ap discovery-type   | 68  |
| show capwap ap info   | 68  |
| show clock date   | 108 |
| show clock status   | 108 |
| show clock time   | 108 |
| show cloud-firmware {version  upgrade status}                             | 133 |
| show connectivity-check continuous-log status                             | 143 |
| show console  | 108 |
| show cpu all  | 37  |
| show cpu status   | 37  |
| show daily-report status  | 150 |
| show diag-info  | 160 |
| show diaginfo collect wtp status  | 160 |
| show disk   | 37  |
| show extension-slot   | 37  |
| show fqdn   | 106 |
| show frame-capture config   | 96  |
| show frame-capture status   | 96  |
| show hardware-watchdog-timer status                                       | 167 |
| show hybrid-mode  | 68  |
| show interface {ethernet   vlan} status                                   | 45  |
| show interface {interface_name   ethernet   vlan   bridge   all}          | 45  |
| show interface send statistics interval                                   | 45  |
| show interface summary all  | 45  |
| show interface summary all status   | 45  |
| show interface-name   | 45  |
| show ip dns server database   | 110 |
| show ip dns server status   | 110 |
| show ip ftp server status   | 114 |
| show ip http server secure status   | 112 |
| show ip http server status  | 112 |
| show ip ssh server status   | 113 |
| show ipv6 interface {interface_name   ethernet   vlan   bridge   all}     | 46  |
| show ipv6 nd ra status interface_name                                     | 46  |
| show ipv6 static address interface interface_name                         | 46  |
| show led status   | 37  |
| show led_locator status   | 157 |
| show led_suppress status  | 156 |
| show load-balancing config  | 99  |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| show load-balancing loading .....   | 99  |
| show lockout-users .....  | 56  |
| show logging debug entries [priority <i>pri</i> ] [category <i>module_name</i> ] [srcip <i>ip</i> ] [dstip <i>ip</i> ] [service<br><i>service_name</i> ] [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [keyword <i>keyword</i> ] .....    | 144 |
| show logging debug entries field <i>field</i> [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] .....   | 144 |
| show logging debug status .....   | 144 |
| show logging entries [priority <i>pri</i> ] [category <i>module_name</i> ] [srcip <i>ip</i> ] [dstip <i>ip</i> ] [service <i>ser-</i><br><i>vice_name</i> ] [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [keyword <i>keyword</i> ] ..... | 143 |
| show logging entries field <i>field</i> [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] .....   | 143 |
| show logging status console .....   | 147 |
| show logging status mail .....  | 145 |
| show logging status syslog .....  | 145 |
| show logging status system-log .....  | 143 |
| show mac .....  | 37  |
| show manager vlan .....   | 47  |
| show mem status .....   | 37  |
| show nebula claim status .....  | 52  |
| show nebula cloud status .....  | 52  |
| show nebula ntp status .....  | 52  |
| show netconf proxy status .....   | 52  |
| show netconf status .....   | 52  |
| show ntp server .....   | 108 |
| show override-full-power status .....   | 110 |
| show packet-capture config .....  | 163 |
| show packet-capture status .....  | 163 |
| show password complexity-verify status .....  | 56  |
| show port setting .....   | 47  |
| show port status .....  | 47  |
| show port type .....  | 47  |
| show power mode .....   | 110 |
| show private-encryption-key status .....  | 132 |
| show radius-server .....  | 117 |
| show ram-size .....   | 37  |
| show reference object [wlan-macfilter-profile] .....  | 40  |
| show reference object [wlan-radio-profile] .....  | 40  |
| show reference object [wlan-security-profile] .....   | 40  |
| show reference object [wlan-ssid-profile] .....   | 40  |
| show reference object aaa authentication [default   <i>profile</i> ] .....  | 40  |
| show reference object ca category {local remote} [cert_name] .....  | 40  |
| show reference object username [username] .....   | 40  |
| show report [interface_name {ip   service   url}] .....   | 149 |
| show report status .....  | 149 |
| show roaming group .....  | 107 |
| show rogue-ap detection info .....  | 92  |
| show rogue-ap detection keyword list .....  | 92  |
| show rogue-ap detection list {rogue/friendly/all} .....   | 92  |
| show rogue-ap detection monitoring .....  | 92  |
| show rogue-ap detection status .....  | 92  |
| show running-config .....   | 132 |
| show schedule-reboot status .....   | 154 |
| show selectable-antenna status .....  | 159 |
| show serial-number .....  | 37  |
| show session timeout {icmp   tcp-timewait   udp} .....  | 155 |
| show setenv-startup .....   | 132 |
| show snmp status .....  | 115 |
| show snmp-server v3user status .....  | 115 |
| show socket listen .....  | 37  |
| show socket open .....  | 37  |
| show software-watchdog-timer log .....  | 167 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| show software-watchdog-timer status .....  | 167 |
| show storm-control ethernet .....  | 49  |
| show storm-control port_name .....   | 49  |
| show system uptime .....   | 37  |
| show tech-support <category> [commands] .....  | 160 |
| show username [username] .....   | 54  |
| show users {username   all   current} .....  | 56  |
| show users default-setting all .....   | 55  |
| show users default-setting user-type {admin   limited-admin  guest  ext-user  user} .....  | 55  |
| show users retry-settings .....  | 56  |
| show users simultaneous-logon-settings .....   | 56  |
| show version .....   | 37  |
| show wireless-bridge port type .....   | 62  |
| show wireless-bridge vlan table .....  | 61  |
| show wireless-hal current channel .....  | 62  |
| show wireless-hal station info .....   | 62  |
| show wireless-hal station number .....   | 62  |
| show wireless-hal statistic .....  | 62  |
| show wireless-hal wds info {all   downlink   uplink} .....   | 62  |
| show wireless-hal wds interface {all   downlink   uplink} .....  | 62  |
| show wireless-hal wds number .....   | 62  |
| show wlan all .....  | 159 |
| show wlan channels {11A 11G} .....   | 62  |
| show wlan channels {11A 11G 6G} [cw {20 20/40 20/40/80 20/40/80/160}] [country country_code]<br>[indoor outdoor psc] .....   | 62  |
| show wlan country-code .....   | 62  |
| show wlan radio macaddr .....  | 62  |
| show wlan slot_name .....  | 62  |
| show wlan slot_name detail .....   | 62  |
| show wlan slot_name list all sta .....   | 62  |
| show wlan-l2isolation-profile {all   rule_count   [l2isolation_profile_name]} ....   | 89  |
| show wlan-macfilter-profile {all   rule_count   [macfilter_profile_name]} .....  | 88  |
| show wlan-radio-profile {all / rule_count   [radio_profile_name]} .....  | 71  |
| show wlan-security-profile {all   rule_count   security_profile_name} .....  | 83  |
| show wlan-ssid-profile {all   rule_count   ssid_profile_name} .....  | 80  |
| show wlan-wds-profile {all   rule_count   [wds_profile_name]} .....  | 90  |
| show wtp-logging % debug entries field { srcif dstif proto  time msg src dst note pri cat all}<br>[begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [ap_mac] .....   | 148 |
| show wtp-logging category .....  | 148 |
| show wtp-logging dbg-result-status .....   | 148 |
| show wtp-logging debug entries [priority pri] [category module_name] [srcip ipv4] [dstip ipv4]<br>[service service] [srciface config_interface] [dstiface config_interface] [protocol<br>log_proto_accept ] [begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [keyword keyword] [ap_mac] ..... | 148 |
| show wtp-logging debug status ap_mac .....   | 147 |
| show wtp-logging entries [priority pri] [category module_name] [srcip ipv4] [dstip ipv4] [ser-<br>vice service] [srciface config_interface] [dstiface config_interface] [protocol log_pro-<br>to_accept][begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [keyword keyword] [ap_mac] .....     | 147 |
| show wtp-logging entries field {srcif dstif proto time msg src dst note pri cat all} [begin<br><1..512> end <1..512>] [ap_mac] .....   | 147 |
| show wtp-logging query-dbg-log ap_mac .....  | 148 |
| show wtp-logging query-log ap_mac .....  | 148 |
| show wtp-logging result-status .....   | 148 |
| show wtp-logging status mail [ap_mac] .....  | 148 |
| show wtp-logging status syslog [ap_mac] .....  | 148 |
| show wtp-logging status system-log [ap_mac] .....  | 147 |
| shutdown .....   | 34  |
| smtp-address {ip   hostname} .....   | 150 |
| smtp-auth username username password password .....  | 150 |
| smtp-port <1..65535> .....   | 151 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| smtp-tls {tls starttls} .....  | 152 |
| snaplen <68..1512> .....   | 163 |
| snmp-server v3user username <username> authentication <none MD5 SHA> privacy <none DES AES><br>privilege <ro rw> .....   | 115 |
| src-ip add ip_address .....  | 96  |
| ssid profile index ssid_profile_name .....   | 61  |
| ssid ssid .....  | 90  |
| ssid .....   | 81  |
| storm-control ethernet .....   | 49  |
| subframe-ampdu <2..64> .....   | 77  |
| test aaa .....   | 34  |
| test aaa {server secure-server} {ad ldap} host {hostname ipv4-address} [host {hostname ipv4-<br>address}] port <1..65535> base-dn base-dn-string [bind-dn bind-dn-string password pass-<br>word] login-name-attribute attribute [alternative-login-name-attribute attribute] ac-<br>count account-name ..... | 124 |
| traceroute .....   | 34  |
| traceroute {ip   hostname} .....   | 162 |
| traceroute {ip   hostname} .....   | 162 |
| traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack   dns} deactivate .....  | 44  |
| traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack dns} bandwidth <0..1048576> priority <1..7> {maximize-bandwidth-<br>usage}; .....  | 44  |
| tx-mask chain_mask .....   | 77  |
| unlock lockout-users ip   console .....  | 57  |
| username rename username username .....  | 54  |
| username username [no] description description .....   | 54  |
| username username [no] logon-lease-time <0..1440> .....  | 55  |
| username username [no] logon-re-auth-time <0..1440> .....  | 55  |
| username username encrypted-password <ciphertext> user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin  <br>user} .....  | 54  |
| username username encrypted-password <password> .....  | 55  |
| username username logon-due-time time .....  | 54  |
| username username logon-time-setting <default   manual> .....  | 55  |
| username username nopassword user-type {admin   guest   guest-manager  limited-admin   user}<br>54   |     |
| username username nopassword user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user} ....   | 54  |
| username username password password user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}   | 54  |
| username username password password user-type {admin   guest   limited-admin   user}   | 54  |
| username username user-type ext-user .....   | 54  |
| users default-setting [no] logon-lease-time <0..1440> .....  | 55  |
| users default-setting [no] logon-re-auth-time <0..1440> .....  | 55  |
| users default-setting [no] user-type <admin   limited-admin> .....   | 55  |
| users force-logout ip   username .....   | 57  |
| wds_profile wds_profile_name .....   | 61  |
| wds_uplink {auto   manual bssid mac_address} .....   | 61  |
| wep <64   128> default-key <1..4> .....  | 86  |
| wep-auth-type {open   share} .....   | 86  |
| wep-key <1..4> wep_key .....   | 86  |
| wireless-bridge {enable   disable} .....   | 61  |
| wireless-bridge vlan .....   | 61  |
| wlan slot_name .....   | 60  |
| wlan-l2isolation-profile rename l2isolation_profile_name1 l2isolation_profile_name2  | 89  |
| wlan-macfilter-profile rename macfilter_profile_name1 macfilter_profile_name2 ....   | 88  |
| wlan-radio-profile rename radio_profile_name1 radio_profile_name2 .....  | 71  |
| wlan-security-profile rename security_profile_name1 security_profile_name2 .....   | 83  |
| wlan-ssid-profile rename ssid_profile_name1 ssid_profile_name2 .....   | 80  |
| wlan-wds-profile rename wds_profile_name1 wds_profile_name2 .....  | 90  |
| wpa-encrypt {aes   auto} .....   | 86  |
| wpa-psk {wpa_key   wpa_key_64} .....   | 87  |
| write .....  | 133 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| write .....                            | 34  |
| wtp-logging mail sending_now MAC ..... | 148 |